

FOCUS


GLOBAL SCALE
of English

WORKBOOK

ROD FRICKER | BARTOSZ MICHAŁOWSKI

1

ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

The page features abstract green geometric shapes in the corners. The top-left corner has overlapping circles and polygons in various shades of green. The bottom-right corner has a more complex arrangement of overlapping polygons and circles, also in different shades of green. The word "FOCUS" is centered in the white space between these green areas.

FOCUS

Pearson Education Limited

Edinburgh Gate, Harlow
Essex, CM20 2JE, England
and Associated Companies throughout the world

www.english.com/focus

© Pearson Education Limited 2016

The right of Rod Fricker, Bartosz Michałowski, Lynda Edwards and Lee Coveney to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the copyright holders.

First published 2016

Third impression 2016

ISBN: 978-1-447-99775-7

Set in Avenir

Printed in Slovakia by Neografia

Acknowledgements

The publishers and authors would like to thank the following people for their feedback and comments during the development of the material:
Humberto Santos Duran, Anna Maria Grochowska, Inga Lande,
Magdalena Loska, Rosa Maria Maldonado, Juliana Queiroz Pereira,
Tomasz Siuta, Renata Tomaka-Pasternak

Photo Acknowledgements

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:
(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

123RF.com: 89/4; **Der Wiener Deewan:** Sebastian Schoofs 24l;

Fotolia.com: 3dmavr 89/5, 89/6, acceptfoto 73, Africa Studio 40, AGyongyi 9, aiisha 92, Alina G 89/1, anyaberkut 84bl, apops 15r, 86r, Jim Barber 31, Birgit Brandlhuber 124b, Andrey Burmakin 50, CandyBox Images 39tl, carlosgardel 127, Diego Cervo 14, chika_milan 48t, chungking 99, Denchik 13r, digiselector 124t, dimakp 5, dmitrydesigner 89/7, donaldrigo 44, Dragonimages 86bl, 98, dusk 23, flairimages 12t, flytoskyft11 61, fotodesign-jegg.de 52tl, Antonio Gravante 49b, jesadaphorn 122, jkphoto69 17cr, joserpizarro 96tl, Kadmy 51, Kaesler Media 16, kasto 12b, Andrey Kiselev 49t, Kisika 88, Oksana Kuzmina 60b, Katarzyna Leszczynsk 36r, Markus Mainka 25t, majivecka 84tr, Marek 27, Oleksiy Mark 48b, michaeljung 39bl, milkmanx 11b, Igor Mojzes 75, Dean Moriarty 96bl, Johann Müller 15l, naypong 11t, nickylarson974 81b, nyul 28, okinawakasawa 17c (right), olgavolodina 46, Photographee.eu 52r, PhotographyByMK 84cr, phyZick 8, Monique Pouzet 26t, Graham Prentice 63, pressmaster 4, ptnphotof 10, raland 96r, RetroClipArt 123, Rido 45tr, sablin 84br, Jérôme Salort 26b, Gina Sanders 62, sepy 60t, shaiith 24c, stokkete 68, Syda Productions 7, tecnofotocr 39r, timjrye 72, totajla 13bl, Gert Vrey 89/2, womue 25b, xmasbaby 64; **Getty Images:** WireImage / Mike Marsland 45bl;

Lentil As Anything: Matt Pettit 24r; **Shutterstock.com:** Andresr 89/9, bergamont 89/3, Elkostas 17c (left), HomeArt 17r, Jessmine 17l, Maksim Kabakou 17cl, Lucky Business 33, Sabphoto 36c, Sukpaiboonwat 81t, wassiliy-architect 36l; **The Kobal Collection:** New Line Cinema 45cl, 45cr, Summit Entertainment 45br

Illustration Acknowledgements

Illustrated by Tom Hughes pp. 17, 41, 65; Jacek Krajewski (Studio Gardengraf) pp. 6, 27, 32, 34, 45, 57, 71, 80, 82, 93, 94, 99, 100, 120, 122, 125, 126

All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

CONTENTS

Introduction

0.1 In class & 0.2 I'm from ...	4
0.3 Favourites & 0.4 My family	5
0.5 Abilities & 0.6 At home	6
0.7 Gadgets & 0.8 Times and dates	7

Unit 1 Family and friends

1.1 Vocabulary	8
1.2 Grammar	10
1.3 Listening Language Practice	11
1.4 Reading	12
1.5 Grammar	14
1.6 Speaking Language Practice	15
1.7 Writing	16
1.8 Word Practice	17
1.9 Self-assessment	18
1.10 Self-check	19

Unit 2 Food

2.1 Vocabulary	20
2.2 Grammar	22
2.3 Listening Language Practice	23
2.4 Reading	24
2.5 Grammar	26
2.6 Speaking Language Practice	27
2.7 Writing	28
2.8 Use of English	29
2.9 Self-assessment	30
2.10 Self-check	31

Unit 3 Work

3.1 Vocabulary	32
3.2 Grammar	34
3.3 Listening Language Practice	35
3.4 Reading	36
3.5 Grammar	38
3.6 Speaking Language Practice	39
3.7 Writing	40
3.8 Word Practice	41
3.9 Self-assessment	42
3.10 Self-check	43

Unit 4 People

4.1 Vocabulary	44
4.2 Grammar	46
4.3 Listening Language Practice	47
4.4 Reading	48
4.5 Grammar	50
4.6 Speaking Language Practice	51
4.7 Writing	52
4.8 Use of English	53
4.9 Self-assessment	54
4.10 Self-check	55

Unit 5 Education

5.1 Vocabulary	56
5.2 Grammar	58
5.3 Listening Language Practice	59
5.4 Reading	60
5.5 Grammar	62
5.6 Speaking Language Practice	63
5.7 Writing	64
5.8 Word Practice	65
5.9 Self assessment	66
5.10 Self-check	67

Unit 6 Sport and health

6.1 Vocabulary	68
6.2 Grammar	69
6.3 Listening Language Practice	70
6.4 Reading	72
6.5 Grammar	74
6.6 Speaking Language Practice	75
6.7 Writing	76
6.8 Use of English	77
6.9 Self-assessment	78
6.10 Self-check	79

Unit 7 Travel

7.1 Vocabulary	80
7.2 Grammar	82
7.3 Listening Language Practice	83
7.4 Reading	84
7.5 Grammar	86
7.6 Speaking Language Practice	87
7.7 Writing	88
7.8 Word Practice	89
7.9 Self-assessment	90
7.10 Self-check	91

Unit 8 Nature

8.1 Vocabulary	92
8.2 Grammar	94
8.3 Listening Language Practice	95
8.4 Reading	96
8.5 Grammar	98
8.6 Speaking Language Practice	99
8.7 Writing	100
8.8 Use of English	101
8.9 Self-assessment	102
8.10 Self-check	103

Exam strategies	104
-----------------	-----

Function phrase bank	106
----------------------	-----

Vocabulary bank	109
-----------------	-----

Vocabulary bank exercises	120
---------------------------	-----

Self-checks answer key	128
------------------------	-----

0.1 In class

Imperatives • alphabet • classroom language

1 Complete the words with the letters a, e, i, o, u.

Open your ⁰books and ¹red
the ²text on ³page ten.

We ⁴sp k ⁵ ngl sh in our
⁶ ngl sh ⁷l ss ns.

I ⁸wr o t e new ⁹wo rds in my ¹⁰no t e book
and I ¹¹r p t them at home.

When we ¹²wo rk in ¹³p rs, I always
¹⁴w rk with my ¹⁵fr nd, David.

2 Choose the correct words.

- ^aListen / Read / Write to the conversation and then
^bmatch / put / choose the correct answer A, B or C.
- ^aRead / Write / Listen the text in your book and
^bunderline / complete / tick the table with one word in
each gap.
- ^aAsk / Tell / Work in groups of four. ^bThink / Ask / Speak
and answer the questions.
- Check / Match / Repeat the beginnings of the
sentences to the correct endings.
- Listen to me and repeat / tick / speak what I say.

3 Complete the conversations with the correct imperative forms.

Conversation 1: Sally, Meg and Mrs Peters

S: ⁰Don't do (X do) that.

M: What?

S: ¹ (X tick) the correct answers.

² (✓ underline) them.

P: ³ , (X talk) Sally.

S: It's Meg, Miss. She doesn't know what to do.

P: ⁴ (✓ ask) me, Meg. ⁵ (X ask)
Sally.

M: Sorry, miss.

Conversation 2: Mrs Jefferson, Class and Misha

J: ¹ (✓ work) in pairs. ² (✓ think) of
a country. ³ (X tell) your partner the name of
the country. Now, your partner can ask you questions
but you can only answer 'Yes' or 'No'. ⁴ (X
say) any other words. OK?

C: Yes, Miss.

M: Eta strana ...

J: Misha, ⁵ (X speak) Russian. This is an
English class.

0.2 I'm from ...

to be • subject pronouns • numbers
• countries and nationalities • age

1 Write the countries or nationalities.

Hi Emma,
I'm in Amsterdam. It's great here. I'm with eight other
people. Lucia is ⁰Brazilian (Brazil), Aslan is ¹
(Turkey), Sebastian is ² (France), Elof is from
³ (Swedish), Thu is ⁴ (Vietnam),
Kostas is from ⁵ (Greek), Jan is ⁶
(Hungary) and Hiroko is ⁷ (Japan). And, of
course, I'm ⁸ (Ireland)!
We're a really multicultural group.
More later.
Caitlin

2 Write the numbers in brackets in words.

Attachment: jpeg picture, Mr and Mrs De Jong

Hi Emma,
Thanks for the
email. The people
here are all from
⁰fifteen (15) to
¹ (18)
years old. There
are three teachers
with us. One is a
student teacher. He's ² (22) and the two other
teachers are older: Mr Blake is ³ (38) – I think
– and Mrs Kirk is ⁴ (51). She's great! Mr Blake
is here with his two children. They are ⁵ (12)
and ⁶ (5). They're nice. Finally, the hotel
managers are a man and woman: Mr and Mrs De Jong.
He's ⁷ (73) and she is ⁸ (69).
They're lovely. They give us food and drink all the time!
See you soon.
Caitlin



3 Use the words to make full conversations. Add any missing words.

- Sue: Henri and Claudia / French teachers.
⁰Henri and Claudia are French teachers.

Leo: How old / they? ^a

Sue: I don't know!

Leo: they / from Paris? ^b

Sue: No / not. ^c
from / Lille. ^d
- Francesca: Carla and I / from Spain. ^a

Simon: Really? you / from Madrid? ^b

Francesca: No / not. ^c
from / Barcelona. ^d

Simon: How old / you? ^e

Francesca: I / eighteen and Carla / seventeen.
^f

0.3 Favourites

Demonstrative pronouns • plural nouns
• colours • adjectives • objects

- 1 Correct the sentences. Write the opposites of the underlined adjectives. Look at the first letters.

- 0 My brother is very old. He's only nine years old. young
- 1 Those new houses are really beautiful. I don't like them.
u _____
- 2 My computer is very fast. I need a different one.
s _____
- 3 These headphones are fantastic. I can't hear the music at all. t _____
- 4 Our school is quite big. There are only 120 students.
s _____
- 5 This is my old watch. I think it's beautiful. n _____

- 2 Complete the names of colours. Look at the last letters.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 0 <u>blue</u> sky | 5 _____w banana |
| 1 _____e carrot | 6 _____e snow |
| 2 a _____k or b _____d | 7 _____y hair when you get roses |
| 3 _____n chocolate | 8 a _____n or b _____e |
| 4 _____k sky at night | grapes |

- 3 Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

beanbag comic headphones photos
skateboard sunglasses T-shirt watch

- 0 I love this comic. There are some great stories in it.
 - 1 Look at these _____. You're in some of them.
 - 2 I don't know which _____ is good for the concert tonight. I like this black one but it's a bit small.
 - 3 You can sit here on this big _____.
 - 4 I use _____ when I watch TV. My parents talk very loudly all the time and I can't hear what people say.
 - 5 This is my _____. It's really fast. It's my favourite sports gadget.
 - 6 You don't look cool with those _____ on in the night. You look stupid and you can't see!
 - 7 That's strange. My _____ says 08.50 but my computer says it's 09.20.
- 4 Choose the correct words a-f. Then write plural forms of the words in brackets.

- 1 Emily: Who are ^athat / those ⁰children (child)?
Amanda: Over there? I think they're from St Paul's School. And ^bthat / those four ¹_____ (man) and ²_____ (woman) with them are their teachers.
- 2 Andy: Come in. ^cThis / That is my bedroom.
Frank: Cool. I like ^dthis / these three ³_____ (poster). Oh, wow! And all ^ethese / this ⁴_____ (comic) and ⁵_____ (photo). And what is ^fthat / those?
- Andy: It's a beanbag. Sit down!
- 3 Tom: What's the time?
Melissa: I'm not sure. My two ⁶_____ (watch) and my phone all say different times!

0.4 My family

Possessive adjectives • possessive 's
• family

- 1 Look at the underlined words. Write the correct family members 1-7. One word is correct.



My family

My ⁰mum's name is John. He's 38. He's got one ¹brother. Her name is Lisa. She's got one child - a ²son called Julia. Julia is three years old. She's very funny. Lisa's ³wife's name is Tony. He's 42 years old. I like him. He's my favourite ⁴aunt and Julia is my favourite ⁵cousin.

I've got one ⁶sister. His name is Luke. He's 16. That's my family. Oh ... wait a minute! My mum's mum - my ⁷grandfather. Her name is Emily. She's 83 years old. She makes great chocolate muffins.

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 0 <u>dad</u> | 4 _____ |
| 1 _____ | 5 _____ |
| 2 _____ | 6 _____ |
| 3 _____ | 7 _____ |

- 2 Choose the correct words.

- W: Hi. ¹I'm / My name's Walter. Where are ²you / your from?
S: Hi. ³I'm / My Sonia. I'm from Canada.
W: Great. Are ⁴you / your parents Canadian?
S: No, ⁵they / their aren't. My dad is Polish. ⁶He's / His name is Radek. My mum is Brazilian. ⁷She's / Her name is Carla.
W: Wow. So ⁸your / you're ½ Brazilian and ½ Polish!
S: Well, not exactly. My dad's parents are Polish. ⁹They're / Their from Lublin. My mum's dad is Brazilian but my mum's mum isn't. ¹⁰She's / Her from Chile! But, ¹¹we're / our very Canadian now. ¹²We / Our like hockey and ¹³we're / our favourite food is pancakes with maple syrup!

- 3 Complete gaps a with the correct question words.

- 0 ^aWhat is your ^bdad's (dad) name?
It's James.
- 1 ^a_____ is your ^b_____ (mum) phone? She can't find it.
I think it's in the car.
- 2 ^a_____ are those ^b_____ (boys) names?
William and Neil.
- 3 ^a_____ is your ^b_____ (sister) favourite singer?
I don't know. She likes lots of terrible singers!
- 4 ^a_____ are your ^b_____ (grandparents) photos?
They're in this box. Do you want to look at them?
- 5 ^a_____ is ^b_____ (Steve) new girlfriend?
A girl called Debbie. She doesn't go to our school.

- 4 Complete gaps b in Exercise 3. Use the correct possessive form of the words in brackets.

0.5 Abilities

can/can't • but • common verbs

1 Complete the sentences with verbs. Look at the first letters.

- 0 How many languages do you **s**peak?
- 1 I don't know how to **u**se my new phone.
- 2 When I'm in the shower, I always **s**ing old songs.
- 3 We're in a disco. The music is great. Come on. Let's **d**ance.
- 4 I want to **c**ook Chinese food for dinner but I don't know how.
- 5 I can't **p**lay. Look at these pictures. They're terrible.
- 6 Let's **p**lay my new computer game.
- 7 Sit down and let me **d**raw you. Wait a minute. I need a pencil and paper.
- 8 The film starts in five minutes. Come on. **R**un!
- 9 I **s**wim in the sea in the summer and **s**ki in Italy or Switzerland in the winter.

2 Look at the information and complete the questions and answers.

	paint	cook	dance
You	✓	X	X
Your sister	X	X	✓
Your parents	X	✓	✓

- 0 you / paint? **a Can you paint?**
✓ **b Yes, I can.**
- 1 you / cook? **a** _____
X **b** _____
- 2 What / your sister / do? **a** _____
She / dance **b** _____
- 3 your sister / cook? **a** _____
X **b** _____
- 4 your parents / cook? **a** _____
✓ **b** _____
- 5 your parents / paint? **a** _____
X **b** _____

3 Use information from Exercise 2 and make full sentences. Use can or can't and the linkers and or but.

- 0 you / paint / you / cook
You can paint but you can't cook.
- 1 Your sister / dance / she / cook

- 2 Your parents / cook / they / dance

- 3 Your parents / cook / they / paint

- 4 Your parents / dance / you / dance

- 5 Your parents and your sister / dance / they / paint

- 6 Your sister / paint / she / cook

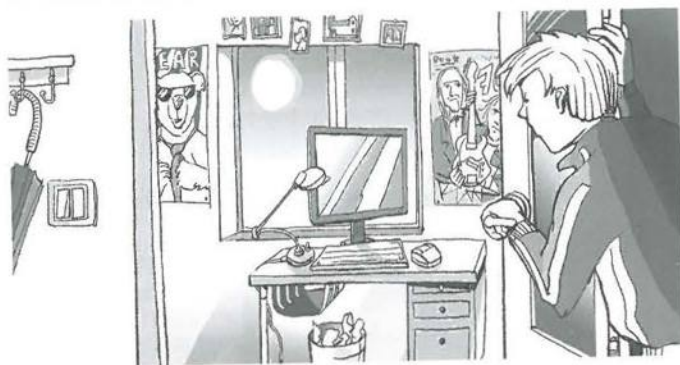
0.6 At home

Prepositions • there is/there are
• rooms and furniture

1 Complete the words with one letter in each gap.

- You sit on these: ⁰c **h**air, ¹a _____ r,
²s _____ a
- You wash (things) in these: ³b _____ h, ⁴s _____ k,
⁵d _____ r
- Food goes in here: ⁶f _____ e, ⁷c _____ r
- This (sometimes) gives light: ⁸l _____ p, ⁹w _____ w
- You walk on this: ¹⁰c _____ t
- You put things on or in these: ¹¹d _____ k, ¹²t _____ e,
¹³w _____ e
- You sleep on this: ¹⁴b _____ d
- There are four of these in a room: ¹⁵w _____ s
- You put these on walls to look at: ¹⁶p _____ s

2 Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.



- 1 The window is **in front of** / **between** / **opposite** two posters.
- 2 There are some photos **above** / **under** / **behind** the window.
- 3 There is a desk **above** / **behind** / **in front of** the window.
- 4 The computer is **on** / **above** / **in** the desk.
- 5 There's a bin **next to** / **behind** / **under** the desk.
- 6 There's a lamp **between** / **next to** / **opposite** the computer.
- 7 There is some paper **on** / **in** / **under** the bin.
- 8 The window is **opposite** / **next to** / **between** the door.

3 Complete the conversation with there is, there are, is there, are there, there isn't or there aren't.

- Sally: It's a nice flat. Only £80 a month.
- Kirsty: I'm not sure. **Is there** a bath?
- Sally: Yes, ¹_____ and ²_____ a shower.
- Kirsty: What about the living room? ³_____ an armchair or a sofa?
- Sally: Yes. ⁴_____ two nice armchairs and a big sofa.
- Kirsty: OK, what about the kitchen? ⁵_____ a dishwasher?
- Sally: No, ⁶_____, I'm afraid but ⁷_____ a table. It's a big room.
- Kirsty: ⁸_____ any chairs?
- Sally: No, ⁹_____, but we can ask the owner to give us two or three.
- Kirsty: Can I think about it?
- Sally: OK. Phone me anytime.

0.7 Gadgets

have got • gadgets

- 1 Complete the gadgets with the words from the box or with (-). Use two words in both lists.

[camera console phone player reader stick]

Gadgets I've got and gadgets I want!

Have got	Want
0 a digital <u>camera</u>	00 a laptop <u>—</u>
1 a CD <u>—</u>	5 a games <u>—</u>
2 an e-book <u>—</u>	6 an MP3 <u>—</u>
3 a memory <u>—</u> (lots!)	7 a tablet <u>—</u>
4 a mobile <u>—</u> (old)	8 a smart <u>—</u>

- 2 Complete the conversation with the correct form of have got and short answers.

G: Hi, Jason. What's this? A gadget dream list?

J: Hi, Graham. Yes.

G: What kind of phone ⁰have you got (you/have) at the moment?

J: Er ... I'm not sure. It's old. That's why I want a smartphone.

G: ¹— (My sister/have) one. She loves it.

J: ²— (you/have) a smartphone?

G: ³— (X). I hate mobile phones. ⁴— (I/have) a games console. It's cool. And an MP3 player for music. How about your e-book reader? How many books ⁵— (you/have)?

J: Hundreds but ⁶— (it/have) a lot on it when you buy it. It's good for holidays.

G: Yes, ⁷— (my dad/have) one. He takes it everywhere.

J: ⁸— (your mum/have) one?

G: ⁹— (X). She likes real books.

J: Me too but ¹⁰— (I/not have) space for books and my camera when I travel.

G: Yes, ¹¹— (you/have) a great camera. ¹²— (you/have) a photo website?

J: ¹³— (✓). Do you want to see it?

G: Not now. ¹⁴— (I/not have) time. Later.

J: OK. See you.



0.8 Times and dates

Days of the week • months and seasons • times • ordinal numbers

- 1 Write the days.



- 0 Number 4 is Sunday. What day is 1? Thursday
 1 Number 5 is Friday. What day is 3? —
 2 Number 2 is Wednesday. What day is 5? —
 3 Number 7 is Saturday. What day is 1? —
 4 Number 1 is Tuesday. What day is 7? —
 5 Number 5 is Thursday. What day is 3? —
 6 Number 7 is Monday. What day is 4? —

- 2 Write the times and dates in words.

7.30 4/12

- 0 It's ^ahalf past seven on the ^bfourth of ^cDecember.
 9.15 5/3

- 1 It's ^a— on the ^b— of ^c—.
 11.45 7/7

- 2 It's ^a— on the ^b— of ^c—.
 10.25 15/11

- 3 It's ^a— on the ^b— of ^c—.
 8.35 21/6

- 4 It's ^a— on the ^b— of ^c—.
 6.10 30/1

- 5 It's ^a— on the ^b— of ^c—.
 4.50 22/4

- 6 It's ^a— on the ^b— of ^c—.

- 3 Complete the conversation between Klaudia and Juan with one word in each gap. Look at the first letters.

J: When's your sister's birthday?

K: In August.

J: August? Is that the ⁰tenth (10th) month? The one after ¹S?

K: No, it's the ²e (8th) month. It's in the ³s holidays.

J: Oh, yes. I always make that mistake. So, what is the tenth month?

K: ⁴O. It's a great month. I love the ⁵a, when the trees are brown and orange.

J: Yes, but after that it is the ⁶w, when it is cold and dark.

K: There are lots of nice days at that time of year. Christmas Day on the ⁷t – ^f— (25th) of ⁸D, New Year's Eve on the ⁹t – ^f— (31st). Then we get a holiday in ¹⁰F, the ¹¹s (2nd) month, and we can go skiing.

J: My favourite time of year is the ¹²s, when it isn't very hot but the sun comes out and everything wakes up after the cold weather. And my birthday is on the ¹³s (6th) of May!

K: Really? My birthday is in May too. On the ¹⁴t (12th). We're both Taurus – the bull. That's why we've got similar personalities.

FAMILY AND FRIENDS

1.1 Vocabulary

Free time and routines • collocations

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box. You can use the verbs more than once.

[go (x2) have listen play read watch]

- 0 I go to school five days a week.
 1 Tim and I _____ games on our phones before school starts.
 2 You _____ to a lot of music. Is this a good CD?
 3 My mum and dad _____ an old film every Friday.
 4 We _____ four books a year in English.
 5 My friends _____ newspapers on their computers.
 6 Jill: Are you alone?
 Jim: Yes, my parents _____ to work on Saturdays.
 7 We _____ an English test every Monday morning.
 8 Jack's aunt and uncle _____ to the radio all the time.

WORD STORE 1A

Collocations – have, go and play

- 2 Complete the texts with *have*, *go* or *play*.

Your free time

What do you do?

Nikki, aged 16

I go to the park with my friends. We ¹ _____ the guitar there. Sometimes, we ² _____ a picnic. We always ³ _____ a good time. Mick and Sam ⁴ _____ the drums – African drums. They're really cool but some people in the park don't like them!

Molly, aged 16

I ⁵ _____ shopping on Saturdays. I ⁶ _____ lunch in a restaurant in the shopping centre.

Bruce, aged 17

I don't have much free time. I don't ⁷ _____ breakfast in the morning. I don't have time – but I ⁸ _____ a shower! On Sundays, I ⁹ _____ snooker. It's a great game. I don't ¹⁰ _____ computer games. I ¹¹ _____ to bed early. I'm always tired and sleepy.

- 3 Complete the sentences with *go*, *have* or *play* and the words from the box.

[bath breakfast concerts chess cinema
fun out party piano youth club]

- 0 My friends and I always have fun when we go out.
 1 I love music but I don't often ^a _____ to ^b _____ because bands don't come to my town.
 2 On school days, I have a shower but on Saturdays and Sundays I ^a _____ a nice, long, relaxing ^b _____.
 3 Lisa and Mark ^a _____ to the ^b _____ every Friday. They love watching films together.
 4 Mick can ^a _____ the ^b _____. He goes to lessons at the local music school.
 5 I sometimes ^a _____ ^b _____ with my grandfather but I never win. He always takes my queen quickly!
 6 We always ^a _____ ^b _____ before we go to school. We have bread, jam and a cup of tea.
 7 It's my friend's birthday tomorrow but I can't ^a _____ to her ^b _____ because it's my mum's birthday on the same day.
 8 My brother wants to ^a _____ to the local ^b _____ with me but he's only 12 and it's for 14–19 year olds.
 9 Where do you usually meet when you ^a _____ ^b _____ with your friends?

WORD STORE 1B

Verb + noun collocations

- 4 Choose the correct verbs.

Free time survey

Your name:

Mark

Your age:

17

How do you spend your free time?

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1 read / watch / visit books | a lot |
| 2 spend / visit / write friends | a lot |
| 3 read / watch / write films | sometimes |
| 4 watch / write / read magazines | sometimes |
| 5 read / spend / watch the TV / the telly | a lot |
| 6 visit / spend / watch time alone | sometimes |
| 7 watch / write / visit a blog | never |
| 8 spend / watch / read DVDs | a lot |

REMEMBER BETTER

It's easier to remember verb + noun collocations if you use them in sentences about your or your friends' lives.

5 Write your own sentences with each collocation.

I read emails from my friends every day.
music blogs

I watch programmes about cooking at weekends.
Quentin Tarantino films

I go to my friend's house every afternoon.
school with my friend

I have a shower in the evening.
breakfast at school

WORD STORE 1C

Verb + preposition collocations

6 Choose the correct words.

Marta: Hi, Jon. Thanks for agreeing to answer my questions for my English project. So, tell me about your free time.

Jon: Well, I spend a lot of time ¹in / on / at school but that isn't free time! After school, I go ²to / - / at home and I stay ³in / at / on home all evening. I spend time ⁴at / in / on my room. I do my homework and listen ⁵at / with / to music. My parents come ⁶- / to / in home late so I can listen to music they don't like!

Marta: And at the weekend?

Jon: Sometimes I go ⁷about / out / away with my friends. We go ⁸on / for / out a walk or to a café. We talk ⁹about / on / for films or music. I am never ¹⁰in / to / at home on Saturdays! On Sundays, I spend my time ¹¹for / to / with my grandparents - ¹²on / in / at my grandparents' house. Oh, and I study English! That's it, I think.

Marta: OK. Thanks.

REMEMBER THIS

It's easier to remember go (to) should be followed by an indefinite article + a noun (go to a restaurant / party / concert), a definite article + a noun (go to the cinema / theatre / gym / zoo / bank) or a noun with no article (go to work / school / bed or go shopping) if you learn the whole phrases rather than individual words.

7 Read REMEMBER THIS. Complete the text with a, the or Ø.

My week



I'm 17 and, from Monday to Friday, I go to ⁰Ø school. In the evening, I stay at home, do my homework and go to ¹___ bed at ten o'clock. On Fridays, I'm free! Sometimes, I go to ²___ party, sometimes my friends and I go to ³___ cinema. On Saturdays, I go ⁴___ shopping. I go to ⁵___ bank to get some money and I often go to ⁶___ café with my friends. In the evening, my girlfriend and I go out. We sometimes go to ⁷___ restaurant or ⁸___ concert. We never go to ⁹___ theatre. Our town hasn't got a theatre. On Sundays, I go to ¹⁰___ gym in the morning and meet my girlfriend in the afternoon. We go for a walk. Sometimes we go to ¹¹___ zoo! It's great! I don't go to ¹²___ work. I get money from my parents.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- My sister and I ___ a film together every Friday.
A play B watch C have
- My brother and his friends ___ party every week.
A go to a B go to the C go to
- My mum and dad always go to ___ on Sunday morning.
A shopping B the park C out
- See you later. Have a _____.
A fun B supper C good time
- Can you play the ____?
A piano B chess C snooker
- I go out ___ my friends a lot.
A for B to C with
- We often talk ___ school when we meet.
A about B with C to
- We can go to the park and have a _____.
A fun B picnic C lunch
- You can't ___ out this evening. You have homework to do.
A have B go C play
- Steve isn't here. He and his girlfriend always go ___ a walk on Saturday afternoon.
A for B to C in

1.2 Grammar

Present Simple

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box. There are three extra verbs.

drink go have lives listen
loves plays reads ~~watch~~ writes

- 0 I watch a lot of DVDs. I love films.
1 My parents don't _____ coffee. They don't like it.
2 My friends and I _____ to the park on Saturdays.
3 Kelly _____ a blog every day. It's always very interesting.
4 My dad _____ a newspaper every day. He loves politics.
5 Andy _____ the guitar. He wants to be in a band.
6 My mum _____ cats. She thinks they are beautiful.

- 2 ★ Complete Text B with the correct form of the verbs in Text A.

A ... Finally, write a short paragraph about yourself so other members of the site can find out a little about you.

My name is Carole. I live in Newcastle. I have a cat and a dog. I go to Bridge Street School. In my free time, I play sports and I watch films. I like books and I read a lot. Sometimes, I listen to music but I don't play computer games. I don't like computer games – but I love writing blogs!

11:23

B Our new members

This is Carole

Her name is Carole. She ⁰ lives in Newcastle. She ¹ _____ a cat and a dog. She ² _____ to Bridge Street School. In her free time, she ³ _____ sports and she ⁴ _____ films. She ⁵ _____ books and she ⁶ _____ a lot. Sometimes, she ⁷ _____ to music but she ⁸ _____ computer games. She ⁹ _____ computer games – but she ¹⁰ _____ writing blogs!

[Click here](#) to send a message to Carole.

- 3 ★★ Complete the conversations with the correct positive (+) or negative (-) forms of the verbs in capitals.

Conversation 0: PLAY

Heather: There's Mark. He's in a band. He plays (+) the guitar.

Joanna: He doesn't play (-) the guitar. He plays (+) the drums.

Heather: Oh, yes. That's right.

Conversation 1: LISTEN

Sian: I love music. Not pop music. I ^a _____ (-) to pop music. I hate it. I ^b _____ (+) to Mozart, Beethoven, people like that.

Kelly: My mum ^c _____ (+) to Mozart when she wants to relax. I think that kind of music is boring.

Conversation 2: WATCH

Donna: My brother ^a _____ (+) television all the time. He ^b _____ (+) sport. Football, volleyball, tennis. Every kind of sport.

Simon: And you?

Donna: I ^c _____ (-) sport. Never. I hate sport. I ^d _____ (+) DVDs in my bedroom.

Conversation 3: LIKE

Sally: My mum ^a _____ (+) cats. My dad doesn't. He ^b _____ (+) dogs but my mum ^c _____ (-) them.

Jake: What about you?

Sally: I ^d _____ (-) cats or dogs – but I love spiders! I've got a tarantula at home!

- 4 ★★★ Put the words in the correct order and the verbs in the correct form.

0 Fridays / not go / early / I / bed / to / on

I don't go to bed early on Fridays.

00 at home / usually / in the evening / Sam / be

Sam is usually at home in the evening.

1 often / go / Mark / to / on / a party / Fridays

2 sister / a / my / not play / instrument / musical

3 mornings / be / on / I / tired / always / Monday

4 go / Sunday / Susan / on / always / to / park / the

5 on / early / Louise / Saturday / not / get up / usually

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Use the words in the box and the adverbs of frequency in capital letters to complete the sentences.

[play (x2) watch relax go be (x3)]

0 I often play chess with my brother. OFTEN

1 Chris _____ TV in the evening. ALWAYS

2 Lisa _____ bored on Sundays. OFTEN

3 My parents _____ hungry in the evening. They don't eat at work. OFTEN

4 Marcela _____ at home when I try to visit her. NEVER

5 My sister _____ in the bath. OFTEN

6 Noah _____ computer games. NEVER

1.3 Listening language practice

A typical weekend • useful verbs • prepositions

- 1 Complete gaps 1–3 with the phrases from the box. There are three extra phrases.

can you describe your can you do
I want to know what are you what do you
what does your what's your

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•28

Reporter: It's Friday afternoon and ⁰I want to know what people do on a typical weekend.

Hello. ¹_____ name?

Simon: Hi, I'm Simon.

Reporter: ²_____ typical weekend for our listeners?

Simon: Sure. My weekends are usually busy with football. I ^arun / walk a football club for children in my area. I ^bbus / coach the kids on Saturdays. It's really nice to watch them – they have a lot of fun and the exercise is good for them. Then on Sunday mornings, I play with my local team. It's the football season so I also watch football on TV or on the Internet. I really love my weekends.



Lena: My name's Lena.

Reporter: Hello Lena. ³_____ do on a typical weekend?

Lena: Well, every weekend, I go to a different part of the city and ^ctake / make hundreds of photos. I photograph people, places and situations – anything that looks interesting or unusual. In the evening, I ^dlook at / watch the pictures on my computer and ^esend / post the best ones on Facebook. A lot of people ^fdiscuss / comment on the photos. It's really interesting. You can see them there.



- 2 Choose the correct verbs a–f in the recording extract above. Then listen and check.

- 3 Complete the conversation with the words from Exercise 2.

Paul: In my free time, I ⁰run a photography club.

Stuart: Really?

Paul: Yes. I ¹_____ a lot of photos of sports events. Do you want to ²_____ them?

Stuart: OK. Where are they?

Paul: On the Internet. I ³_____ the photos on my website. Here they are.

Stuart: Very nice. Do people ⁴_____ on them?

Paul: No, they can't. Not on my website but there are some in the local newspaper.

Stuart: Hey. I ⁵_____ young children to play tennis. Can you put some photos of us in the newspaper?

Paul: Of course. What time are the lessons?

REMEMBER THIS

Some words have more than one meaning.

Run:

A to move very fast, by moving your legs faster than when you walk, e.g.

run a marathon, run to school

B to organise or be in charge of an activity, business, organisation or country, e.g. run a company

Post:

A to send a letter, package, etc. by post, e.g. post a birthday card to your aunt

B to put a message or computer document on the Internet so that other people can see it, e.g. post a comment on Facebook

- 4 Read REMEMBER THIS. Decide if the underlined word has meaning A or B.

- 1 Can you post this letter for me, please? ☐
2 My teacher wants me to run the school chess club. ☐
3 I run 2km every day before school. ☐
4 Can you show me how to post a video on YouTube? ☐

WORD STORE 1D

Prepositions

- 5 Complete the conversation with the correct prepositions: in, on or at.

Ray: Hi Emily, do you want to go for a pizza?

Emily: No, thanks. It's Saturday. I go to the gym on Saturday.

Ray: Do you do a lot of exercise?

Emily: Well, ⁰on a typical weekday, I get up early ¹_____ the morning and I go for a run.

Ray: Even ²_____ Monday mornings?

Emily: Yes, every day. ³_____ the weekend, I go running ⁴_____ the afternoon. And I go to the gym.

Ray: I know why you don't go running ⁵_____ Saturday or Sunday morning. You're the same as me. I get up ⁶_____ noon ⁷_____ the weekend.

Emily: No, I get up ⁸_____ the morning but I go swimming.

Ray: Oh wow! Do you go running ⁹_____ night, too?

Emily: Not often! I sometimes go ¹⁰_____ the evening but only in the summer when it's light and warm. What about you? Do you go running?

Ray: Sometimes ¹¹_____ midnight when Mum and Dad phone me and say 'It's late! Come home, now!' I don't really like sport. I like making videos. I post them ¹²_____ the Internet. You know. ¹³_____ YouTube and things like that.

Emily: I know. I don't watch YouTube videos but I know some people like them. I sometimes watch films ¹⁴_____ TV but not often. I just prefer doing exercise. It's great. Come running with me later.

Ray: Let's run now, to the pizza restaurant.

1.4 Reading

Working away from home • useful phrases • collocations

Glossary

tanker (n) = a large ship that carries oil

leave (n) = time that you are allowed to spend away from your work

strict (adj) = expecting people to obey rules or to do what you say

seem (v) = to appear to exist or be true

1 Read the article quickly and choose the best title A, B or C.

A I love my long holidays at home.

B Life is difficult when my husband comes home.

C This is not the right job for me.

☐
☐
☐

Arthur lives in Portsmouth with his wife and three children. He has a good job but he isn't happy. Arthur is the captain of a large tanker. He loves ships and the sea and is good at his job. He earns a lot of money and has a lot of free time at work to study languages and write. So what's the problem?

Arthur has a 'three months on-two months off' contract, which means that he goes to

sea for three months and then has two months of holiday. This means that some years he isn't at home for Christmas, some years he is away during the summer holidays and every year he misses someone's birthday, school shows and other special days. His children are 12, 10 and 6 and they grow quickly at that age.

When Arthur comes home, the children spend a day or two just looking at him and trying to think of what to say. The last week of his leave is filled with tears. There are also good times. The family have parties to celebrate any birthdays missed and they sometimes have

Christmas dinner in November or January but there is always a feeling of sadness that they can't happen at the right time.



Life is also difficult for his wife, Theresa. She is a teacher and, for three months, has no husband to help her with shopping, cooking, cleaning and checking homework. She is very strict, so the children help with the housework, go to bed at nine o'clock and get up for school without any problems. Theresa prepares dinners in advance and makes the most of every hour of the day. Then, Arthur comes home. He ignores the normal bedtimes because

he wants to tell his children stories and play with them. The children stop doing housework and, because they go to bed late, they are tired when they get up in the morning. Of course, Theresa understands and is pleased to see her family so happy, but it takes a week or more to get life back to normal when Arthur goes back to sea.

Now, Arthur wants to find a job on land but he knows it isn't easy. What can a ship's captain do when he isn't on a ship? Arthur's dream is to be a writer of children's books and work from home. This dream cheers him up when he is on the other side of the world and still has two months before he sees his family again.



2 Read the article and choose the correct answers A, B or C.

- 1 Arthur doesn't like
 - A working on a boat.
 - B spending time away from his children.
 - C the captain on his ship.
- 2 Arthur gets two months of holiday
 - A after working for three months.
 - B once a year.
 - C at the same time each year.
- 3 Arthur never
 - A spends Christmas at home.
 - B celebrates his children's birthdays.
 - C has a year when he is at home for all the special days.
- 4 Arthur's wife
 - A doesn't do all the housework when Arthur is away.
 - B doesn't go out to work.
 - C isn't very well-organised.
- 5 When Arthur is at home, his wife
 - A is angry with him for changing the children's bedtime.
 - B is tired for the first week because of the changes.
 - C is happy to see how her husband spends time with their children.
- 6 In the future, Arthur wants to
 - A work on ships that don't sail long distances.
 - B write about his life at sea.
 - C stay at home and write stories for children.

3 Look at the underlined phrases in the article. Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

- 0 My sister's son is 15. He's a bit difficult. I think a lot of children are, at that age.
- 1 It's a very sad film. My eyes are always filled with t when I watch it.
- 2 Don't wait for the day of the concert to buy tickets. We can buy them in a on the Internet.
- 3 This is the last day of our holiday. Don't spend the time at your computer. Make the m of the day. Go swimming, go for a walk, have some local food.
- 4 My dad works three days on, three days o so he often works at the weekend.
- 5 My mum works f home so she is always there when we get back from school.
- 6 We're in Australia! I can't believe it. We're on the other s of the world!



REMEMBER THIS

Of is often used to mean possession or connection:

the captain of a ship

a feeling of sadness

the last week of his leave

a writer of children's books

4 Read REMEMBER THIS. Match the words to make phrases and use them to complete the sentences.

mother	your coat
day	the house
name	three children
colour	the village
walls	the week

- 0 What's the name of the village you go to every summer?
- 1 Elizabeth is a _____. She is very busy.
- 2 The _____ are very thin. You can hear everything.
- 3 Saturday is my favourite _____.
- 4 I love the _____. Red really suits you!

WORD STORE 1E

Verb collocations

5 Choose the correct words.

Our lives

We are all different and here is your chance to tell other people about your typical day.

Joanna, aged 17

I get ¹up / off / out at seven o'clock every morning and get ready for school. My parents ²take / get / put me to school in their car and then go to work. They work ³on / for / with a big company and they work very hard. They come ⁴to / in / back home at about seven o'clock in the evening and they are always tired.

I come home ⁵to / from / out of school at half past three and then I look ⁶out for / after / up my two brothers. I give them dinner and then I do my homework. I go ⁷in / to / for bed at half past ten. It's a busy life but at the weekend I am free!

Wednesday 18th April, 23.14

Comments (1)

Are you sure you go to bed at 10.30? Look at the time of your post!

1.5 Grammar

Present Simple: yes/no and wh- questions

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the questions with the words from the box.

[Are How Is ~~What~~ When Where Who]

- 0 What is your name?
My name's Joe.
- 1 Are you American?
Yes, I am.
- 2 Where are you from in the USA?
I'm from Seattle, in Washington State.
- 3 Is that your car?
No, it isn't. I can't drive.
- 4 Who is that girl?
That's my sister, Clara.
- 5 How old are you?
I'm 17.
- 6 When is your birthday?
In May. On the seventeenth.

2 ★ Complete the conversation with do or does.

- Cheryl: Hi, I'm Cheryl. ⁰ Do you work here?
- Harry: Yes, I ¹ do. Are you here for a job?
- Cheryl: Yes but Mr Parkin isn't here. What time ² does he usually arrive?
- Harry: At about 10 o'clock. ³ do you want a cup of coffee?
- Cheryl: Yes, please. Thanks. What ⁴ do you do here?
- Harry: I clean the kitchen and the tables in the restaurant.
- Cheryl: ⁵ do you like your job?
- Harry: It's OK. I like the money.
- Cheryl: ⁶ do lots of people come here to eat?
- Harry: Yes, they ⁷ do. From about 12 o'clock until 3. Then we can relax.
- Cheryl: What time ⁸ do the restaurant close?
- Harry: At 5, but we work until 6. Here's Mr Parkin now. ⁹ do you want me to tell him you're here?
- Cheryl: Just let me finish my coffee! Right. I'm ready. ¹⁰ do I look OK?



3 ★ ★ Complete the questions and short answers using the words in brackets.

- 1 Neil: ⁰ Does Jenny like (Jenny/like) the same kind of music as you?
Will: ¹ Yes (yes/do). We listen to my CDs all the time.
- Neil: ² What (what/she/do) at the weekend?
Will: I play football and she watches. She loves football.
- Neil: ³ Does she go (she/go) shopping?
Will: ⁴ No (no/not). She doesn't like shopping much. That's lucky because I hate shopping.
- 2 Sally: ¹ Do you and Will like (you and Will/like) the same kind of music?
Jenny: ² No (no/we/not). He plays his CDs all the time. They're awful!
- Sally: ³ What (what/you/do) at the weekend?
Jenny: I watch Will play football. It's really boring but he wants me to be there.
- Sally: ⁴ Do you like (you/like) shopping?
Jenny: ⁵ Yes (yes/do). I love it but Will hates shopping so I never go with him.

4 ★ ★ ★ Look at the underlined words in the answers and complete the questions.

- 0 Where do you spend your free time?
I spend my free time at home.
- 1 On Saturdays on Saturdays?
Paul goes shopping on Saturdays.
- 2 Your homework your homework?
I do my homework in the evening.
- 3 Work work?
My uncle? He works in Aberdeen.
- 4 Cats cats?
Mark? No, he doesn't. He hates them.
- 5 What kind of music do you like?
I like rock and pop music.
- 6 Up early up early?
Yes, they do. My dad gets up at 6 o'clock and my mum gets up at 6.15.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the conversation with the correct forms of the words from the box. There are two extra sets of words.

[Amy/speak Ellen and Sonia/go Jake/live
Jason/spend Karl/have you/do
your parents/read you/watch your mum/like]

- 0 What do you do in your free time?
- 1 Where in Windsor or Winchester?
- 2 How often do you watch DVDs?
- 3 How many languages do you speak?
- 4 What lunch at school?
- 5 What kind of music do you like?
- 6 Where do you go after school?

1.6 Speaking language practice

Preferences

- 1 Match questions 1–3 to answers A–F. There are three extra answers.



- 1 Which of these two activities do you like best?
- 2 What's your favourite free time activity?
- 3 Do you like playing computer games?

- A No, I don't. I like looking at YouTube videos but I don't play games on the computer. ☐
- B I love swimming. I go swimming three times a week. ☐
- C Yes, I do. I love walking. My friends and I go walking quite often. ☐
- D I don't like spending my free time alone in my room. It's boring. ☐
- E I prefer the first one. I prefer walking with friends to sitting alone with a computer game. ☐
- F I prefer films, not books. ☐

- 2 Complete the conversation with the answers from the box.

I always go on Saturday afternoon
I don't like them very much
I like comedies – films that make me laugh
I love Ben Stiller I don't know it Yes, I do
The one I like best is called *The Royal Tenenbaums*

Greg: Do you like films?

Selma: Yes, I do.

Greg: When do you usually go to the cinema?

Selma: 1

Greg: What kind of films do you like?

Selma: 2

Greg: Who's your favourite actor?

Selma: 3. He's brilliant.

Greg: What's your favourite film?

Selma: 4

I think it's awesome. My friends don't agree!

Greg: What do you think of fantasy films?

Selma: 5. I can't stand the *Twilight Saga* films and I don't really like *Harry Potter*.

Greg: What about *The Lord of the Rings*?

Selma: 6

My friend's got it on DVD but I always choose something else to watch. What about you?

Greg: Oh, I love fantasy films. My favourite is *The Hobbit*.



- 3 Complete the email with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

Hi Elana,
Thanks for the email. It's good to make new friends.
What do you do in your free time? Do you ⁰like going out?
I ¹r_____ like going to concerts. I love music and I
listen to new bands a ²l_____. My ³f_____ singer
is Oliver Sykes from the band Bring Me The Horizon. He's
amazing. ⁴W_____ is your favourite singer? What
⁵k_____ of music do you like? What do you
⁶t_____ of metal? I love it. What ⁷a_____ you?
I don't like pop music very ⁸m_____. I can't
⁹s_____ singers like Justin Bieber and Miley Cyrus. I
think they're ¹⁰t_____ ... well, I hope they aren't your
favourites!
Sometimes my friends and I go to a disco. Discos are OK
but I ¹¹p_____ concerts.
Write soon and tell me about your likes and dislikes.
Julia

- 4 Complete the conversation with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

about brilliant hate kind like
lot love much prefer stand
terrible think what who

Dave: Do you ⁰like sports?

Amelia: Well, I like some.

Dave: What ¹_____ of sports do you like?

Amelia: I like sports that I can do alone. I like walking
and running. I like swimming a ²_____ too.
I don't like football very ³_____ and
I ⁴_____ Formula 1 – it's awful.

Dave: ⁵_____ 's your favourite sports person?

Amelia: I don't know. I guess I like Andy Murray. He's
awesome.

Dave: What do you ⁶_____ of Cristiano Ronaldo?

Amelia: I can't ⁷_____ him. He's ⁸_____. I don't like
footballers with all their tattoos.

Dave: He doesn't have any tattoos.

Amelia: Well, that's good but I ⁹_____ people who love
their sport but don't do it for the money. People
like Ola Taistra. She's a climber. She's ¹⁰_____,
and a nice person too, I think.

1.7 Writing

An informal email

1 Choose the option A, B or C which is wrong.

Starting an email:

- 1 A Dear Dave B Hi Dave C I'm Dave

Finishing the email:

- 2 A Write soon B Thanks for your email
C Say hello to your parents
- 3 A All the best B Nice to see you C Bye for now
- 4 See you ...
A best B soon C in June
- 5 Have a
A good time B good trip C fun
- 6 A Regards, B Love, C You're
Tom Tom Tom

2 Change the underlined words to contractions.

Hi Sofia,

Thanks for your email. ⁰I'm / I am glad you want to write to me.

I ¹___ / do not speak Spanish so ²___ / it is lucky that your English is so good.

What are you interested in? I love travelling and photography.

³___ / I have got a blog – www.rubyphototravel.blog.abc – with photos of my holidays on it. Do you like them?

I ⁴___ / do not think they are very good but they are my photos! My next holiday (next week!) is in Turkey!

⁵___ / It is great that you can come to England. My mum is very excited but ⁶___ / she is worried. She ⁷___ / does not know how to cook Spanish food. She wants to know what you like so she can find it on the Internet!

Say hello to your family. See you in July.

Bye for now.

Ruby

3 Complete the email with one word in each gap. Last letters are given.

Hi Ruby,

⁰Thanks for your email. I love your photos! I can teach you some Spanish if you like and then you can come to Spain, take lots of photos and try our food!

I'm ¹_____d in travel, too. I sometimes go to Morocco – it isn't far from my house! I love the food there and the people. They are very friendly. I like Moroccan music, too. Do you like ²_____t? What kind of music are you interested ³_____n?

Please say thank you to your mum but I want to eat real English food when I am in England. ⁴_____y hello to your parents. See you ⁵_____n. I hope you like Turkey. ⁶_____e a good trip!

⁷_____I the best.

Sofia

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 You would like a pen friend in a different country. You've just read Marysa's post on a website. Write her an email of about 100 words.

- Use appropriate greeting and ending phrases.
- Give information about yourself (age, family, where you live, etc.).
- Ask Marysa about her life and interests.
- Describe your hobbies and your favourite free time activities.



Hi!

My name is Marysa. I'm a Dutch girl from a small town near Amsterdam. I am 18 years old. I speak Dutch, English and German. I want to find friends from all over Europe.

Please write to me at marysa17@poli.net

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my informal email:

- I used an appropriate greeting at the beginning, e.g. *Hi Marysa*. ☐
- I have given my personal information (age, family, where I live, etc.). ☐
- I have asked Marysa for more details about herself. ☐
- I have described my interests. ☐
- I have asked about Marysa's hobbies and favourite free time activities. ☐
- I have used the Present Simple tense. ☐
- I have used contractions (e.g. *I'm / aren't / that's*). ☐
- I have used an appropriate ending, e.g. *Bye for now*. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have written about 100 words. ☐
- My email is neat and clear. ☐

1.8 Word Practice

Family and friends

1 Read the texts and look at the pictures. Then complete the table.



	Age	Birthday	Nationality	Gadget	Favourite object
Mary	14			digital camera	
Stephen					
Emilia					

Mary

Hi. My name's Mary and I'm fourteen years old. My birthday is in the first month of the year. I'm from Valencia in Spain. I love technology and I've got a gadget for taking photos. My favourite object is very colourful - I sit on it in my bedroom.

Stephen




Hello! I'm Stephen. I'm two years older than Mary. My birthday is in summer. The month of my birthday starts with 'A'. I live in Berlin. I use a gadget to listen to music. It's very small and it's got blue headphones. I've got hundreds of songs on it. My favourite object? That's easy. I take it to the park every day and I do tricks on it.

Emilia

And I'm Emilia. My birthday is in winter - at Christmas time! I'm the same age as Stephen. I'm from Portugal - I live in Lisbon. I use a gadget to phone my friends, send texts and look at the Internet. My favourite object is something you wear in the sun.

2 Read and look at the pictures. Complete what Harry says about his typical Saturday.

On Saturdays I usually get ¹  late. I have

²  and then I play ³  games or listen to ⁴ . At about one

o'clock I go to my ⁵  house and

we have ⁶ . After that I always go to

the ⁷  with my friends.

I go ⁸  at about five o'clock. In the

evening, my family and I watch ⁹  and

I go to ¹⁰  at ten o'clock.

3 Read the definitions and write the words.

- This is a big building where lots of people go. You can watch films here. What is it?

- You play this game with black and white pieces on a black and white board. What is it?

- This is another way of saying 'twelve o'clock at night'. What is it?

- This is your mother's brother. Who is it?

- When you do this, you buy clothes, CDs, books and other things. What do you do?

- There is loud music, singers, drums and guitars. Lots of people watch it. What is it?

4 Cross out the wrong word or phrase.

- on a typical weekday / Friday afternoon / the evening
- at night / morning / noon
- in seven o'clock / the morning / the afternoon
- go to the gym / a party / home
- on the cinema / the Internet / YouTube
- at home / school / bedroom
- watch a film / a blog / TV
- come / go / spend home

1.9 Self-assessment

For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions

😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
1.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about free time activities and routines.					Students' Book pp. 12–13 Word Store p. 3 Workbook pp. 8–9
1.2	Grammar	I can use the Present Simple to talk about facts, routines, likes and dislikes.					Students' Book p. 14 Workbook p. 10
1.3	Listening	I can identify details in a radio interview about people's typical weekends.					Students' Book p. 15 Workbook p. 11
1.4	Reading	I can find specific details in a magazine article about family life.					Students' Book pp. 16–17 Workbook pp. 12–13
1.5	Grammar	I can ask questions using the Present Simple.					Students' Book p. 18 Workbook p. 14
1.6	Speaking	I can ask and answer questions about likes and dislikes.					Students' Book p. 19 Workbook p. 15
1.7	Writing	I can write to someone and tell them about me and my interests.					Students' Book pp. 20–21 Workbook p. 16

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions I liked (any expressions you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

1.10 Self-check

1 Match beginnings 1–5 to the correct endings a–h. There are three extra endings.

- 0 We don't often visit
1 We can have a
2 Sam and his friends always talk
3 It's nice to go
4 Mandy always has
5 I never go to the
- a cinema but I watch a lot of DVDs.
b for a walk in the park on a sunny day.
c blog every day.
d about computers and computer games.
e the guitar with my friends.
f picnic in the park on Saturday.
g time with our friends.
h dinner at 5 p.m.
i my aunt and uncle.

☒
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

/5

2 Complete the text with in, on or at in each gap.

Holiday time! – 1

8th July

No school for two months so I don't get up early ⁰in the morning. ¹___ a typical day, I have breakfast ²___ noon! Then I read emails and funny stories ³___ the Internet and, late ⁴___ the afternoon, I go out with friends. We usually stay out late. I often get home ⁵___ midnight and then I watch a DVD and go to bed at about 2 a.m. I love the holidays!

/5

3 Complete the text with a verb in each gap. First letters are given.

Holiday time! – 2

12th July

My parents don't like the way I ⁰spend my time on holiday. Now, I ¹g___ up at eight o'clock. When my parents go to work, I ²l___ after my ten-year-old sister. I make breakfast for her and ³t___ her to the park or the shopping centre. I can go out with my friends in the evening but I ⁴c___ home from parties or the cinema at 11 p.m. and I don't watch films. I ⁵h___ a shower and go to bed before midnight.

The holidays are still cool!

/5

4 Rewrite the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 0 My dad (play) snooker on Sundays with friends from work.
My dad plays snooker on Sundays with friends from work.
1 We (always / be tired) at the end of the school day.
2 My brother (not / like) reading books. He prefers comics.
3 Mike (never / have) lunch at school. He is always hungry before 3.30 p.m.
4 Erin (not / watch) television. She thinks it's boring.
5 What kind of music (you / listen to) when you relax?

/5

5 Use the words in brackets to write questions.

- 0 What kind of books / read? (your parents)
What kind of books do your parents read?
1 What sports / play? (your best friend)
2 What / favourite film? (your cousin's)
3 What / eat for breakfast? (your father)
4 What time / get up on Saturdays? (your sisters)
5 How often / go to discos? (you)

/5

6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- 1 What do you usually do ___ Sunday afternoons?
A in B on C at
2 Come and work at the café with me. It's great. We always ___ a good time.
A have B play C do
3 Do you want to ___ shopping with me on Saturday? I need to buy some things for university.
A go to B go C go for a
4 Tim ___ often stay at home at the weekend. He goes out with his friends all the time.
A doesn't B isn't C don't
5 Claire: Matt's got a new blog.
Annette: Really? What ___ about?
A he writes B he does write C does he write

/5

Total /30

2

FOOD

2.1 Vocabulary

Food • supermarket • collocations

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Decide which word is different from the others in groups 1–4. What kind of food is it? Find the right category. There is one extra heading.

- | | | | |
|---|------------|---------|--------|
| 0 | potato | carrot | orange |
| 1 | strawberry | tuna | apple |
| 2 | potato | cheese | milk |
| 3 | juice | chicken | tea |
| 4 | ice cream | carrot | potato |

Dairy	Vegetable	Meat	Drink	Fish	Fruit
					orange

WORD STORE 2A

Food containers

- 2 Complete the names of the containers with one letter in each gap. Then complete the shopping list with the correct food from the box.

brown bread honey ice cream
lemonade potatoes spaghetti
tuna water white chocolate

- 0 A j a r of honey.
1 A ^ap _____ t of ^b_____
2 A ^at _____ n of ^b_____
3 A ^al _____ f of ^b_____
4 A ⁵kg ^ab _____ g of ^b_____
5 Four ^ac _____ s of ^b_____
6 A large ^ab _____ r of ^b_____
7 A ^ab _____ e of mineral ^b_____
8 A ^at _____ b of strawberry ^b_____

REMEMBER BETTER

It's easier to remember the names of food containers if you learn them together with the names of food, e.g. I've got some ice cream. → I've got a tub of ice cream.

Look in your fridge at home. Complete the sentences about the food you can see in the fridge. Check any new words in a dictionary.

In my fridge, there is:

1 a carton of milk

2 _____

In my fridge there are:

3 _____

4 _____

- 3 Complete the conversations with the correct words.

Lisa: This healthy food camp is a great idea but it's a long walk to get there. Have you got a drink?

Chris: Yes. I've got some cola.

Lisa: Cola! That isn't healthy. I've got two small ¹cartons / boxes / packets of orange juice.

Ten minutes later ...

Chris: Oh, great, a shop. Wait a minute.

Lisa: What do you want to buy?

Chris: A small ²tub / tin / jar of mayonnaise for my sandwiches.

Lisa: You could buy a tomato and some lettuce to make it nicer. Not mayonnaise.

Half an hour later ...

Lisa: We've still got 5 km to go. Let's stop and eat. Have you got something for lunch?

Chris: Yes. My ham sandwiches, two ³bars / tubs / tins of chocolate, two ⁴tins / jars / cans of cola and a ⁵box / packet / jar of crisps.

Lisa: You really need this healthy food camp, Chris.

The next morning ...

Lisa: Morning, Chris. Time for breakfast.

Chris: We haven't got any bread!

Lisa: All we need for breakfast is a ⁶packet / tin / carton of milk and a ⁷tub / packet / bar of corn flakes.

Chris: But I've got a jar of chocolate spread in my bag!

Lisa: Chris, why exactly are you on this camp???

WORD STORE 2B

Phrases related to food

- 4 Match the phrase beginnings 1–4 to the correct endings a–c. There is one extra beginning.

0 make

1 do

2 have something for

3 eat in

4 get

a

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

a front of the telly

b a takeaway

c dessert

d a snack

- 5 Complete the conversation with the expressions in Exercise 4. Make changes if necessary.

Liz: What do you do when you're hungry? Do you ⁰make a snack?

Amy: Sometimes but I want to ¹_____ today.

Liz: Great! I love Indian food. We can go to my house and ²_____. There's a good film on this evening.

Amy: OK. I've got some strawberries. We can ³_____.

Liz: Not ice cream?

Amy: No. Not after a big Indian dinner.

6 Use the picture to complete the crossword.



WORD STORE 2C

In a supermarket

7 Complete the words with one letter in each gap.

SHOPPING PROBLEMS!

Dave: I always forget to buy bread. I usually remember when I get to the ⁰cheekout to pay.

Matt: There are never any shopping ¹b k s when I want one.

Sue: You need £1 for a ²t l y but I never have a £1 coin.

Bob: I finish work at 9 p.m. and the ³s m t closes at ... 9 p.m.!

Ellen: The people in the shop don't know how to fill the ⁴s v s. I find honey with the mayonnaise and tuna with the chocolate!

REMEMBER THIS

Some food products have different names in British English and in American English, e.g. *biscuits* (UK) – *cookies* (USA), *sweets* (UK) – *candy* (USA), *chips* (UK) – *French fries* (USA), *crisps* (UK) – *chips* (USA).

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Choose the option A, B or C which is wrong.

- 1 I don't eat a lot of meat but I often use vegetables like ___ to make very nice meals.
A potatoes B eggs C carrots
- 2 If you're going to the shops, could you get me a carton of ___, please?
A orange juice B milk C crisps
- 3 This packet of ___ is nearly empty. How can I cook dinner now?
A tuna B rice C pasta
- 4 I can't eat dairy food so I never have ___. Well, I have it if it is made from soya.
A cheese B juice C milk

9 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

bag ~~basket~~ cans cartons checkout
packet shelves tins trolleys

In a supermarket ...

Mr Jenkins: I've got a shopping ⁰basket.

Mrs Jenkins: That's no good. I want a 10kg ¹_____ of potatoes, onions, five ²_____ of milk, a ³_____ of spaghetti, water and ten ⁴_____ of soup.

Mr Jenkins: OK, OK. I understand! Where are the ⁵_____?

Mrs Jenkins: Outside. Get a good one. I don't want to push one with a broken wheel round the shop. Meet me by the biscuits.

Mr Jenkins: OK, OK ...

Five minutes later ...

... I've got one.

Mrs Jenkins: Great. Now, you get the spaghetti. What's wrong?

Mr Jenkins: I can't see any spaghetti.

Mrs Jenkins: That's because these ⁶_____ are full of biscuits. They don't have spaghetti and biscuits together. Spaghetti is over there with the pasta, rice and flour.

Mr Jenkins: Oh, right. That's a good idea.

/10

2.2 Grammar

Countable and uncountable nouns

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Write the plural forms of the nouns in brackets.

- 0 When we go on walks, we always take lots of carrots (carrot) to eat.
- 1 Do you want _____ (potato) with your chicken or do you prefer rice?
- 2 I love June. _____ (Strawberry) are so cheap.
- 3 For a real Spanish omelette, you need five or six _____ (egg).
- 4 We often pick _____ (mushroom) in autumn but I'm always scared to eat them.
- 5 These _____ (orange) are very juicy. You only need two of them to make a glass of juice.

2 ★ Find nine more food items in the word search. Decide if they are countable or uncountable.

C	O	L	I	V	E	O	I	L
H	R	E	G	G	A	N	Y	T
E	A	G	F	R	U	I	T	F
E	N	B	O	R	I	O	A	L
S	G	R	E	T	H	N	H	O
E	E	E	N	P	O	F	R	U
M	N	A	P	P	L	E	Y	R
S	O	D	H	O	T	D	O	G

Countable

egg

Uncountable

3 ★ ★ Complete the sentences by choosing the correct options.

- Peter: I think we're ready to start dinner. There ¹is some / are some / is any cheese in the fridge.
- Sian: Great! Er ... ²Is there any / Is there some / Are there any mushrooms? I can't see them.
- Peter: Mushrooms. Oh, no. I forgot.
- Sian: And there ³isn't some / aren't some / isn't any spaghetti.
- Peter: Oh.
- Sian: So, no spaghetti bolognese for us today. What can we eat?
- Peter: ⁴Is there any / Are there some / Are there any bread?
- Sian: Bread? I don't want a sandwich. I want dinner!
- Peter: Well, there ⁵is some / are some / are any potatoes. We can have fried eggs and potatoes.
- Sian: Er ..., Peter.
- Peter: Yes?
- Sian: There ⁶isn't any / aren't some / aren't any eggs.
- Peter: Oh.

4 ★ ★ Complete the questions and short answers.

- Man: You're very busy. Can I do something to help you?
- Woman: Oh, yes, please. Can you make a shopping list and go shopping for me?
- Man: OK. What do you want?
- Woman: I don't know. That's why I want you to make a list.
- Man: Right. ⁰Is there any fruit (fruit)?
- Woman: ⁰⁰Yes, there is (✓). There are apples and oranges.
- Man: Good. ¹_____ (eggs)?
- Woman: ²_____ (✓).
- Man: Great. ³_____ (ketchup)?
- Woman: ⁴_____ (X).
- Man: Oh, right. Ketchup. ⁵_____ (honey)?
- Woman: ⁶_____ (✓). We've got four jars. Don't buy any honey. We never eat it but you always buy it.
- Man: Really? ⁷_____ (vegetables)?
- Woman: ⁸_____ (X).
- Man: Oh, is there any ...
- Woman: Please, if you want to help me, just go to the kitchen and look.

5 ★ ★ ★ Complete the questions and answers with one word in each gap.

- Maggie: Can I ask you a few questions about food you eat?
- Alex: OK.
- Maggie: ⁰How much fruit do you eat?
- Alex: Oh, I eat a ¹_____ of fruit. I love apples.
- Maggie: So, ²_____ apples do you eat in a week?
- Alex: I eat about two a day, so fourteen.
- Maggie: Wow. That's ³_____ lot. What about other food?
- Alex: ⁴_____ cheese do you eat?
- Maggie: ⁵_____. Just a little bit on a Saturday evening.
- Alex: OK. Last question. ⁶_____ hot dogs do you eat a week?
- Maggie: Hot dogs? Yuk. I don't eat ⁷_____ hot dogs or hamburgers. I hate fast food.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

- Tanya: The party starts in an hour. Are you ready?
- Brett: I think so. Are there ⁰any crisps here?
- Tanya: Yes, there ¹_____. There are a ²_____ of packets in the kitchen. About twenty, I think.
- Brett: Twenty! Wow. And have we got any cola?
- Tanya: Yes. Not ³_____. One or two bottles.
- Brett: Oh. Why not more?
- Tanya: Well, there is ⁴_____ lot of juice and ⁵_____ many of our guests drink cola.
- Brett: OK, you know best. Oh, here's the phone number of the pizza restaurant. We can order some.
- Tanya: Good idea. How ⁶_____ do you want?
- Brett: I think eight is enough.
- Tanya: One for you and seven for the rest of us!

2.3 Listening language practice

Questions about cooking • adjective/noun + noun phrases • cooking verbs

- 1 Put the words in the correct order to make questions 1–4. Then complete the conversation between the presenter and Kate Grant with the questions in the correct places A–D.

0 how / it / make / you / do

How do you make it?

1 need / many / you / do / how / eggs

2 so / you / the pancakes / make / do / OK, / how

3 do / what / need / you

4 you / a healthy recipe / got / for / pancakes / have

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•44

Part 2

KG: For the first recipe you just need eggs, potatoes and olive oil. It's called a Spanish omelette.

P: Oh. ⁰How do you make it?

KG: There are many different ways. But this is how you make a healthy Spanish omelette. First, slice four potatoes. Then boil the potatoes in some water. After that, mix some eggs together.

P: OK, so you mix the eggs. A _____?

KG: You need six eggs for four people. Mix the eggs and the potatoes. Then put some ⁰⁰olive (N) ¹oil (____) into a pan. Fry the omelette on both sides. And that's it – your ²Spanish (____) ³omelette (____) is ready! Eat it with some salad for a really healthy meal.

Part 3

P: And what about dessert, Kate? My favourite dessert is pancakes. B _____?

KG: Yes, I've got a very easy recipe for ⁴fruit (____) ⁵pancakes (____).

P: Cool. C _____?

KG: Some fruit, for example some bananas and strawberries. Then you need one cup of flour, one cup of milk and one egg. Plus some oil.

P: OK, so bananas, strawberries, flour, milk, an egg and oil. What do you do?

KG: First you chop the fruit and then you make the pancakes.

P: D _____?

KG: You mix the flour, milk and the egg together. Then you put some oil into a pan. When it is hot, you put some of the mixture into the pan and make a pancake. You fry it on both sides. Take it out and put the fruit on top.



REMEMBER THIS

A lot of food names in English consist of an adjective followed by a noun, e.g. a *Spanish omelette*, or two nouns, e.g. a *chocolate cake*.

- 2 Read REMEMBER THIS. Look at the underlined words 1–5 in the recording extract and decide if the words are adjectives (A) or nouns (N).

- 3 Match words 1–6 with words a–f to make food names. Then complete the sentences with the correct food.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 0 fruit | a sandwiches |
| 1 birthday | b oil |
| 2 hot | c flakes |
| 3 olive | d dog |
| 4 tomato | e sauce |
| 5 cheese and tomato | f cake |
| 6 corn | g pancakes |

- 0 I love fruit pancakes. My favourites are with strawberries in chocolate sauce. What are your favourite kinds?
- 1 When you have a _____, do you put mustard or ketchup on it?
- 2 In Italy, they often put _____ on bread. I know it's unhealthy, but I prefer butter. Which do you prefer on your bread?
- 3 Some people always call _____ ketchup. Do you put ketchup on a lot of food?
- 4 For lunch, I often have two _____. Sometimes, I have ham.
- 5 I always have _____ with lots of milk on them for breakfast.
- 6 Jenny: This is a lovely _____. Thank you.
Mum: Well, it's a special day. You're eighteen. An adult.

WORD STORE 2D

Cooking verbs

- 4 Underline the correct words in each instruction.

1 Chop the vegetables / pasta into small pieces and then fry them until they are soft.

2 Boil the potatoes in some oil / water for about 25 minutes.

3 Mix the oil in the pan / milk and flour together until the mixture is smooth and easy to pour.

4 Fry the onions in some oil / milk for about five minutes. Be careful not to let them turn brown.

5 Slice the carrots / olive oil and place into a pan of boiling water with a teaspoon of salt.

2.4 Reading

Unusual restaurants • food adjectives

Glossary

grow (v) = to make plants develop and produce fruit or flowers

district (n) = an area of a town

chat (v) = talk in a friendly, informal way

customer (n) = someone who buys goods or services from a shop, restaurant, etc.

pumpkin (n) = a large, orange vegetable that is popular at Halloween

drum (n) = a musical instrument played by hitting it with your hand or a stick

Eat out for less

'How much is it?' In some restaurants, the answer is: 'What you want to pay.' Here are some of the 'Pay-what-you-want' restaurants around the world.

A Der Wiener Deewan – Vienna, Austria

This is a Pakistani restaurant but it is in Vienna. I always go down the stairs to a small, cosy room but the restaurant is on three floors altogether. There are no menus and waiters don't come to ask you what you want – the food is in large, hot, containers on a table and the menu changes every few hours but always with three vegetarian and two meat options. The meal then costs what you want to pay. The traditional, Pakistani food is delicious but, be careful, some of it is very spicy! Try the **Alu Methi Gajar** – spicy but sweet vegetables – and, of course, some Pakistani **rice**. The restaurant isn't only a 'Pay-what-you-want' restaurant but also a 'Play what you want'



restaurant. In the evenings, you can take a djembe, an African drum, and play music with others. It's a really cool place to spend some time.

B Soul Kitchen – Red Bank, New Jersey, USA

Soul Kitchen is a great place to go for lunch. The menu has choices of **starters** – my favourite is the **mixed green salad** – **main course** – fish, meat or vegetarian – and **dessert**. But, it doesn't have any



prices. That's because you can pay what you want. The restaurant asks for \$10 or more but people who haven't got \$10 can eat there and work for an hour to pay for their meal. The food is healthy and local. The restaurant even has a garden and grows a lot of the **vegetables** that they use in their meals.

C Lentil As Anything – Melbourne, Australia



This is a vegetarian restaurant in Australia's second city. In fact, there are four Lentil As Anything restaurants in the city. Nine hundred people eat in the restaurant in the Abbotsford district of the city every day. The restaurants are open all day and you can eat **breakfast, lunch** and **dinner** there. They are friendly places where you can chat to other customers, listen to good music and, when you leave, you put some money in a box. The food is healthy and delicious. They don't serve meat but you can find great food with other ingredients like **pumpkins**. Their **pumpkin curry** is amazing.

1 Read the three reviews and decide which restaurant A–C is best for people 1–4. One person doesn't have a suitable restaurant.

- 1 'I love hot food from China and India. I'd like to try food from a different country in Asia.' ☐
- 2 'I don't eat meat. I think it is wrong to kill animals for food. I don't even like seeing other people eat meat.' ☐
- 3 'I love traditional, English breakfasts with sausages, bacon and fried eggs.' ☐
- 4 'I haven't got a job. I have a lot of time in the middle of the day but I haven't got money for food.' ☐

2 Read the reviews again. Match sentences 1–9 to the restaurants. Write **DWD** (Der Wiener Deewan), **SK** (Soul Kitchen) or **LAA** (Lentil As Anything).

- 1 They grow some of the food they serve. ☐
- 2 The recipes are from a different country. ☐
- 3 You can pay for your food or work. ☐
- 4 There are four restaurants with the same name. ☐
- 5 You can play music here. ☐
- 6 You can eat here at any time of the day. ☐
- 7 You get a three-course meal here. ☐
- 8 You put the food you want on your plate. ☐
- 9 You can't eat meat here. ☐

3 Look at the underlined verbs + prepositions in the reviews. Then complete gaps 1–6 with the verbs from the box.

[chat eat go (x2) pay play listen]

- 0 You can eat in a café or restaurant.
- 1 You can _____ for your meal with cash or a credit card.
- 2 People _____ to music on MP3 players and CDs.
- 3 There is a café and a restaurant in the building.
You _____ up some stairs to the café and down some other stairs to the restaurant.
- 4 I often _____ to my friends on my computer. We use Skype.
- 5 After school, I sometimes _____ for a pizza or a hot dog with my friends.
- 6 My brother is in a band and sometimes he lets me _____ the guitar with them.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct verbs and prepositions from Exercise 3. Use the correct forms of the verbs.

- 0 When I'm on holiday, I always eat in small, local restaurants.
- 1 I've got the chance to _____ the guitar _____ some really good musicians.
- 2 Where do you want to _____ dinner?
- 3 My dad always _____ the meal when we go out to a restaurant with the whole family.
- 4 To get to the toilet, _____ the stairs and turn left.
- 5 The tables in the restaurant are very big so you can meet other people and _____ them when you eat.
- 6 Jane likes it when she can _____ Spanish music in Spanish restaurants and Chinese music in Chinese restaurants – then she believes she's in that country!

REMEMBER THIS

A **meal** is food that is eaten at regular times of a day, e.g. breakfast or dinner.

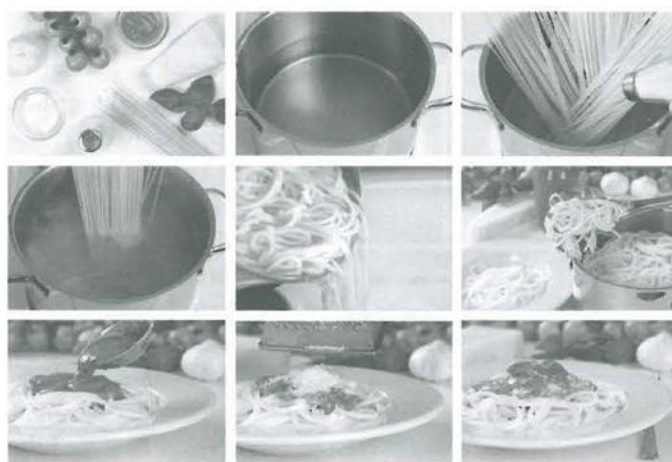
A meal can consist of several **courses**, e.g. soup, meat with vegetables, and dessert.

A **dish** is a particular variety of food served as part of a meal, e.g. spaghetti bolognese or Yorkshire pudding.

An **ingredient** is any food that is used to make a dish, e.g. cheese or tomatoes.

5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Put the words in bold from the texts under the correct heading.

Meals of the day	Courses	Dishes	Ingredients
<u>breakfast</u>			



WORD STORE 2E

Food adjectives

6 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

- 0 I love this restaurant. The waiters are polite and the food is delicious.
- 1 I don't eat meat. What **v** _____ dishes do you serve?
- 2 Can I have a glass of water, please? This curry is very **s** _____ !
- 3 I'm sorry, we don't have rice. We only serve **I** _____ food and we don't grow rice in this country.
- 4 I hope you like this. It's a **t** _____ meal from my country. My grandmother always cooks it when I go home to visit.
- 5 This bread is very **f** _____. It's still warm.



2.5 Grammar

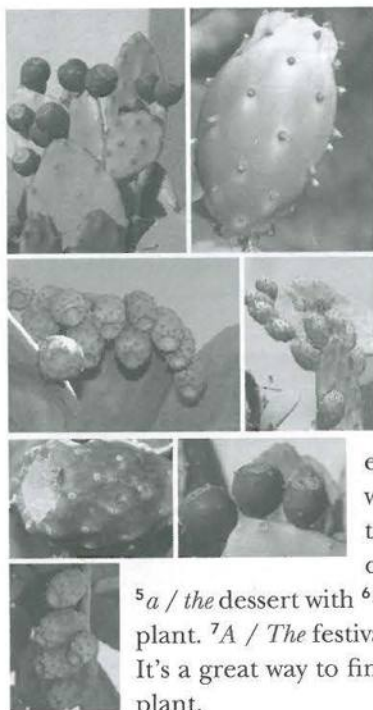
Articles

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Write a or an before the nouns.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 0 <u>an</u> apple | 5 _____ jar |
| 1 _____ egg | 6 _____ bag |
| 2 _____ potato | 7 _____ onion |
| 3 _____ orange | 8 _____ pizza |
| 4 _____ carrot | 9 _____ ingredient |

2 ★ Choose the correct option.



Nopal is ¹a / the cactus. There are a lot of nopal plants in Mexico and many Mexicans use nopal as ²an / a ingredient in their meals. The Festival del Nopal is a festival of nopal cooking but it happens in ³the / - Santa Cruz, California. ⁴A / The festival is very popular and you can eat different food made with nopals. It is great with tomatoes and onions, with cheese or you can make

⁵a / the dessert with ⁶- / the fruit from the nopal plant. ⁷A / The festival happens in ⁸- / the July. It's a great way to find out about this delicious plant.

3 ★★ Complete the text with a, an, the or Ø in each gap.

My aunt lives in ⁰a big city. It is called ¹____ Bristol. My aunt's house is in ²____ city centre. Bristol is ³____ exciting city. There are ⁴____ lot of restaurants and we always eat in one when we stay with my aunt. Near her house, there is ⁵____ Chinese restaurant, ⁶____ Indian restaurant, ⁷____ two Italian restaurants and ⁸____ Moroccan restaurant. ⁹____ Moroccan restaurant is my favourite. ¹⁰____ food there is amazing. I love ¹¹____ Moroccan food.



4 ★★★ Each sentence has one mistake. Underline the mistakes and correct them.

- 0 I don't eat the meat but I eat a lot of vegetables. meat
- 1 The shops in this town don't sell an ingredients I need. _____
- 2 I live in the town in southern England. _____
- 3 We've got a pizza for lunch but the pizza has got mushrooms on it and I don't like the mushrooms. _____
- 4 We stay in a small town in the Italy every August. _____

5 ★★★ Add two articles to each sentence. Rewrite the sentences with the articles in the correct places.

- 0 Do you like food that they sell at café in Market Street?
Do you like the food that they sell at the café in Market Street?
- 1 I need onion for this dinner but I haven't got any and shops near here aren't open.

- 2 There is food festival in main square of our town in June.

- 3 I'm good cook but recipes in this book are very difficult.

- 4 I like pizzas but I don't like pizzas from restaurant near our school.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Complete the conversation with the (x1), a (x2) and Ø (x3).

- Melanie:** This is ⁰a good photo. Where is it?
Jason: That's me in ¹____ Spain. We go there every year in ²____ August.
Melanie: Are you in ³____ restaurant in this photo?
Jason: It's a café. ⁴____ cakes there are delicious. We always go there on the way back to the hotel from the beach.
Melanie: So what are those things on your plate?
Jason: They are churros. They are a Spanish cake.
Melanie: So, you like ⁵____ Spanish cakes, eh?
Jason: I love all cakes, from England, Spain, Germany - everywhere.
Melanie: Well, I've got ⁶____ cake here. It's a carrot cake.
Jason: Carrot cake? A cake with carrots in it?? Maybe there are some cakes that I don't like.

2.6 Speaking language practice

Ordering food

- 1 Complete the sentences with the prices in words. Use the verb *be* in the correct form.



- 0 A burger is two pounds fifty.
 1 A hot dog _____
 2 Tuna sandwiches _____
 3 Cheese sandwiches _____
 4 Tea _____
 5 An apple _____

- 2 Put the words in the correct order.

- 0 are / hi, / order / ready / to / you
Hi, are you ready to order? S
 1 OK / to / what / you / drink / like / would _____ ? ☐
 2 that's / no, / it / thanks, /
 much / it / how / is _____ ? ☐
 3 your / meal / enjoy _____ ? ☐
 4 pounds / it's / seventy-five / two _____ ? ☐
 5 have / please / I / juice, / can / orange / an _____ ? ☐
 6 yes, / a / like / hot dog / I'd _____ ? ☐
 7 you / here / are _____ ? ☐
 8 else / anything _____ ? ☐

- 3 Look at the sentences in Exercise 2. Decide who says them, the customer (C) or the server (S). Write the letters in the boxes.

- 4 Put the conversation in Exercise 2 in the correct order.

Server: 0 Hi, are you ready to order?
 Customer: 1 _____
 Server: 2 _____
 Customer: 3 _____
 Server: 4 _____
 Customer: 5 _____
 Server: 6 _____
 Customer: 7 _____
 Server: 8 _____
 Customer: Thanks.

- 5 Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

Server: Are you ready to ⁰ order?
 Customer: Yes, please. I'd ¹ _____ a hot dog.
 Server: What ² _____ you like to ³ _____?
 Customer: A mineral water, please.
 Server: ⁴ _____ or small?
 Customer: A small one, please.
 Server: ⁵ _____ else?
 Customer: No, thanks, ⁶ _____'s it. How ⁷ _____ is it?
 Server: It's two pounds ninety-five.
 Customer: ⁸ _____ you are.
 Server: ⁹ _____ your meal.
 Customer: Thanks.



2.7 Writing

An email of invitation

- 1 Complete the sentences related to parties with the words from the box.

clothes everyone (x2) the holidays
people presents spicy

- 1 ... Everyone makes some Indian food ...
2 ... ^a _____ usually bring ^b _____ ...
3 ... My friend's curries are really _____ ...
4 ... We always talk about _____ – not school work! ...
5 ... ^a _____ wears strange ^b _____ ...

- 2 Match the sentences from Exercise 1 to the parties A–D. Two sentences match the same party.

- A fancy dress party
B bring-your-own-curry party
C birthday party
D An after-exams party

1	

- 3 Choose the correct words (A, B or C) to complete the email.

1 __ Tom!
2 __ are you? I'm fine. It's my birthday next week.
3 __ you like to come to my party? It's 4 __ Friday at my house. 5 __ you come?
Write soon.
Jessica

- | | | |
|---------|-------|---------|
| 1 A Hi | B Bye | C High |
| 2 A Who | B How | C What |
| 3 A Do | B Are | C Would |
| 4 A at | B in | C on |
| 5 A Do | B Can | C Are |

- 4 Complete the email with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

at delicious hope let love party
text ~~things~~ want wishes would

Hi Mary,

How are ⁰things?

Do you ¹ _____ to come to our ² _____? It's on Saturday ³ _____ 4 p.m. at the pizza restaurant in Turner Road.

The pizzas there are ⁴ _____. It's an after-exams party – no-one talks about school or exams!

I ⁵ _____ you can come. Email or ⁶ _____ me and ⁷ _____ me know.

Best ⁸ _____.

Adam

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 It's your birthday soon. Write an email of invitation of about 50–70 words to a friend.

- Use appropriate greeting and ending phrases.
- Invite your friend to the party.
- Describe the details of the party (occasion, place, date, time, etc.).
- Tell your friend what you would like them to do (bring food, help with the preparations, confirm they can come, etc.).



SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my email of invitation:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| • I have started with an appropriate greeting, e.g. <i>Hi Mike!</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have asked how my friend is. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have included an invitation to the party. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have given details about the party. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have used an appropriate ending, e.g. <i>Love, Best wishes</i> , etc. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have used contractions (e.g. <i>I'm / aren't / that's</i>). | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have checked my spelling. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have written 50–70 words. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • My email is neat and clear. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 Read the article about a restaurant. Choose the best word (A, B or C) for each space.

What an experience!

Do you ⁰ _____ going to new restaurants that are different from the normal fast food places? Well, here's a really interesting one. There's ¹ _____ good film called 'About Time' and in the film a boy and a girl meet in an unusual restaurant. It's unusual because the restaurant is completely dark and you ² _____ see people or the food! The restaurant is called 'In the Dark' and it's a real place ³ _____ London.

When you arrive at the restaurant, a waiter takes you into the dining room and everything is black. Of course, there aren't ⁴ _____ menus on the tables! The waiter tells you about the dishes they serve. ⁵ _____ food is amazing!

A ⁶ _____ of people love this restaurant and you always need to book a table a long time ⁷ _____ you go. It's a great experience and it really ⁸ _____ cost that much!

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------|----------|
| 0 A like | B likes | C liking |
| 1 A the | B a | C an |
| 2 A aren't | B doesn't | C can't |
| 3 A in | B at | C on |
| 4 A some | B much | C any |
| 5 A Many | B A | C The |
| 6 A some | B many | C lot |
| 7 A before | B after | C when |
| 8 A doesn't | B isn't | C don't |

TIPS

- 1 Do we know about this film already?
- 3 Which preposition do we need with a city?
- 4 The verb before the gap is negative.

Open cloze

2 Complete the email. Write ONE word for each gap.

Hi Marta,

Thank you ⁰ for your email. How ¹ _____ you? I'm fine. I'm happy because I haven't got ² _____ homework tonight. Now I can go ³ _____ a swim after school. ⁴ _____ you like swimming? I love sports. I also play football ⁵ _____ Saturdays with my friends.

Sometimes in the evenings I ⁶ _____ out with friends but tonight I want to ⁷ _____ at home. I've got ⁸ _____ new DVD to watch with my sister. We've got ⁹ _____ ice cream and lemonade. Just like the cinema! Write ¹⁰ _____!

Ben

TIPS

- 1 What phrase do we use when we meet someone or start an email?
- 3 You need a preposition here.
- 4 We need this word to make a question in the Present Simple.

2.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions
 😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
2.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about the food I like and don't like.					Students' Book pp. 24–25 Word Store p. 5 Workbook pp. 20–21
2.2	Grammar	I can talk about quantity with countable and uncountable nouns.					Students' Book p. 26 Workbook p. 22
2.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in a radio programme about food and recipes.					Students' Book p. 27 Workbook p. 23
2.4	Reading	I can find specific detail in an article about unusual restaurants.					Students' Book pp. 28–29 Workbook pp. 24–25
2.5	Grammar	I can use the articles <i>a/an</i> and <i>the</i> with nouns.					Students' Book p. 30 Workbook p. 26
2.6	Speaking	I can order food and drink in a café.					Students' Book p. 31 Workbook p. 27
2.7	Writing	I can write an email to invite a friend to my party.					Students' Book pp. 32–33 Workbook p. 28

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

2.10 Self-check

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Mum: What do you want to drink?
Colin: A *bar / can / tub* of lemonade, please.
- 2 Debbie: Do you want me to buy anything from the shop?
Mum: Just a *loaf / bar / packet* of flour.
- 3 Dad: Do you need any vegetables?
Mum: Er ... yes. Get 250g of *strawberries / eggs / mushrooms*.
- 4 Celina: Do you eat a lot of dairy food?
Donna: Yes. I have *cheese / tuna / onions* with everything.
- 5 Sara: Oh, no. I shouldn't.
Fiona: Go on. It's only a small *tub / bar / can* of chocolate.

/5

2 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

You're hungry. Where do you go? You can go to a large food shop, a ⁰*supermarket*. You take food from the ¹*s*_____ and put them in your shopping basket or ²*t*_____. When you have got everything, you go to the ³*c*_____ to pay. After that, you go home and make a ⁴*s*_____ – a sandwich or something like that. Or you can go to a Chinese, Indian or other restaurant, get a ⁵*t*_____ and eat it at home in front of the telly!

/5

3 Complete the words. First letters are given.

- 0 This is a *traditional* meal from the south of Spain.
- 1 Ali: This curry is very *s*_____.
Noah: Good, I love hot food.
- 2 I can't *f*_____ the eggs. There isn't any oil.
- 3 The food here is all *l*_____, from farms in the area.
- 4 Can you *s*_____ the onions into thin pieces before you cook them, please?
- 5 Shane: Is your dinner OK?
Janine: Yes, it's *d*_____.

/5

4 Complete the questions and sentences with one word in each gap.

Conversation 1

- Paul: There's no orange juice. ⁰*How much* do you drink every day?
- Cathy: Not much. One glass, at breakfast time. Oh, and a glass when I get home. And before I go to bed. Actually, I drink quite ^a_____.

Conversation 2

- Jack: Are ^a_____ potatoes?
- Tia: No, but there ^b_____ rice. You can use that.
- Jack: What, to make chips??

Conversation 3

- Tom: We can have a barbecue. ^a_____ meat in the fridge?
- Mum: Yes, there is but not ^b_____. I need to go shopping again. Don't worry, though. I've got a recipe for vegetarian burgers.
- Tom: Er ..., well, maybe we can get a takeaway.


/5

5 Complete the conversation with *a, an, the* or \emptyset in each gap.

- Nathan: What's this?
- Paula: It's ⁰*a* pancake. ¹_____ American pancake.
- Nathan: Great. I love pancakes. Are they easy to make?
- Paula: Yes. I always use ²_____ recipe for pancakes in this book. It's ³_____ great book.
- Nathan: I like ⁴_____ cooking but I haven't got any books. I always look on ⁵_____ Internet. Why buy books when you can get everything for free?

/5

6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.



To everyone,

There's ¹_____ cheese, a small bottle of olive oil, a ²_____ of French bread and some apple juice in the fridge. They're mine!! Please don't take them.

Natalie is coming this evening and ³_____ food and drink is for us.

We're going to ⁴_____ a nice snack and eat it ⁵_____ front of the telly.

We've got a DVD. If you want to watch it with us, you're very welcome – but not if you eat our food!

See you later.

Tom

- | | | |
|------------|--------|--------|
| 1 A a | B some | C any |
| 2 A packet | B bar | C loaf |
| 3 A the | B a | C some |
| 4 A do | B get | C make |
| 5 A in | B on | C at |

/5

Total /30

3.1 Vocabulary

Jobs • collocations with *job* and *work* • prepositions

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the jobs to the descriptions.

gardener	journalist	lawyer	mechanic	nurse
plumber	receptionist	shop assistant	waiter	

This person ...

- 0 writes for a newspaper. journalist
- 1 fixes cars. _____
- 2 welcomes people to an office or a hotel and answers the telephone. _____
- 3 works with patients and people who are ill. _____
- 4 helps people with legal problems and sometimes works in a court. _____
- 5 fixes problems with water pipes. _____
- 6 works with plants, e.g. trees, flowers and lawns. _____
- 7 helps you buy things. _____
- 8 brings you food in a restaurant. _____

WORD STORE 3A

Jobs with suffixes

2 Use the correct form of the words in brackets and write the names of the jobs.

- 0 Javed: What does your dad do?
Linda: He's an engineer (ENGINE).
- 1 Careers advisor: So, Tom, what career are you interested in?
Tom: Well, actually, I want to be a _____ (BUILD).
- 2 Abigail: You're very good with young people. You could be a teacher.
Sally: Yes, but I'd prefer to be a sports _____ (INSTRUCT).
- 3 Pam: Is it easy to become a _____ (HAIR / DRESS)?
Sandra: Well, there's a lot to learn. Not all people can do it.
- 4 Sue: You've got a lovely voice. Why don't you join the drama club?
Dan: No way. I'd hate to be an _____ (ACT).
- 5 Phil: You're really good at drawing.
Cath: Thanks. I'd love to be an _____ (ART) in Paris or Florence.
- 6 Tim: My ambition is to become a _____ (SCIENCE).
Mr Dell: Well, if you work hard, you could be a really good biologist.
- 7 Amy: Why do you want to be an _____ ? (COUNT)
Sam: I like working with numbers.

3 Complete the names of jobs. Last letters or endings are given.

- 0 I like writing and I want to work for the *New York Times* journalist
- 1 I've got a class of primary school students. _____
- 2 I design new buildings. _____ect
- 3 I stand in a big, noisy building all day and help to make cars. _____y _____er
- 4 I take people to the railway station, the cinema, the theatre and to many other places in my car. _____er
- 5 I work with animals. I try to help them when they are ill. _____t
- 6 I think my job is very important. People come to me when they have problems with their teeth. _____ist
- 7 I fight for my country when there are wars. _____i

WORD STORE 3B

Collocations – *job* and *work*4 Complete the conversation with *job* or *work* in each gap.

- Woman: Can I help you?
- Man: Yes, I'm looking for a job.
- Woman: Do you want a part-time ¹ _____ or do you want to ² _____ full-time?
- Man: I want a full-time ³ _____. I don't want to ⁴ _____ part-time.
- Woman: Can you ⁵ _____ at night or do you prefer to ⁶ _____ nine to five?
- Man: I don't mind when I ⁷ _____ but I'd like a well-paid ⁸ _____. I can ⁹ _____ long hours and I always ¹⁰ _____ hard. I don't want to ¹¹ _____ only 8 hours a day – I can stay at work for 12 hours or more!
- Woman: Well, we need factory workers. We pay £10 an hour.
- Man: Have you got anything else? That's quite a boring ¹² _____ and quite a badly-paid ¹³ _____, too. I'm hoping for £15 an hour or more.

REMEMBER THIS

Some job names may mean something else in your language. Remember, in English these jobs mean:

Manager – a person who manages/controls a company/organisation or a part of it, e.g. sales manager, personnel manager

Chief – a leader / the most important person in a company/organisation, e.g. a police chief, an army chief

Boss – a supervisor or a person who decides who to hire in a company/department

Chef – a qualified and experienced cook, usually in a hotel or a restaurant

5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Choose the correct words.

- 1 My *chief* / *boss* gets very angry when I'm late for work.
- 2 He's the finance *boss* / *manager* of a small company.
- 3 I'd like to be a *chef* / *chief* in a Greek restaurant.
- 4 Police *chiefs* / *chefs* from different countries often meet to discuss new ideas.



WORD STORE 3C

work + preposition

6 Complete the text with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

[at for from in (x2) on own to with]

How do young people see their future?

Here are some of your responses:

I don't know what I want to do when I finish my education. My parents work ⁰for large companies but I don't think I'd like that. I'd like to work ¹home and be free to go shopping or sleep when I want. I definitely don't want to be a teacher. I couldn't work ²a school ³children. I don't think I'd be very good at working ⁴a team, either. I like to decide what to do and when to do it. Yes, I believe it's a good idea for me to work alone, without any people around me. I could work ⁵an office – at my own desk with my own computer – but I would really like to stay at home.

Katy, 17

REMEMBER BETTER

Sometimes in a conversation you might forget or not know a name of a job. Try to describe what the job involves, so that the person you are talking to can guess what you mean. They may give you the name of the job and the conversation will continue without interruptions.

E.g. He builds houses. (*He is a builder.*)

She works in a garden. (*She is a gardener.*)

He works with engines. (*He's an engineer.*)

7 Complete the mini conversations with one word in each gap.

Tom: Emily is ... I don't remember the word. She works in an office and she ⁰counts money.

Marta: You mean an accountant.

Tom: That's it. Thanks!

Ella: Brian works in a hotel, in ¹r_____, you know, where people go when they first arrive.

Beatriz: So, he's a receptionist.

Ella: Yes.

Isabel: I want to work in the theatre. I want to ²a_____.

Sam: You want to be an actress.

Isabel: An actress, yes.

Pauline: My friend Sara is a sports ...

Simon: ... star?

Pauline: No, she trains people. She ³i_____ them.

Simon: Oh, a sports instructor. Great. Which sports does she teach?

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Choose the correct words.

- 1 I work *from* / *on* / *in* home so I don't need to dress smartly.
- 2 My mum works *with* / *on* / *in* a supermarket but not on a checkout.
- 3 Kate is an *actor* / *acting* / *actress*. Her dream is to go to Hollywood.
- 4 I love working *with* / *for* / *from* animals. That's why I work at our local zoo.
- 5 I don't want a badly- *pay* / *money* / *paid* job. I want to be rich!
- 6 Do you always work *long* / *hard* / *team*?
- 7 My dad is a *lawyer* / *plumber* / *mechanic*. People often phone up in the middle of the night because there is water on their kitchen floor.
- 8 I work eight hours *in* / *the* / *a* day. I start at 7 a.m. and finish at 3 p.m.
- 9 Do you want a full-time or *part* / *short* / *half*-time job?
- 10 I don't want to work outside so I don't want to be an *accountant* / *a gardener* / *a secretary*.

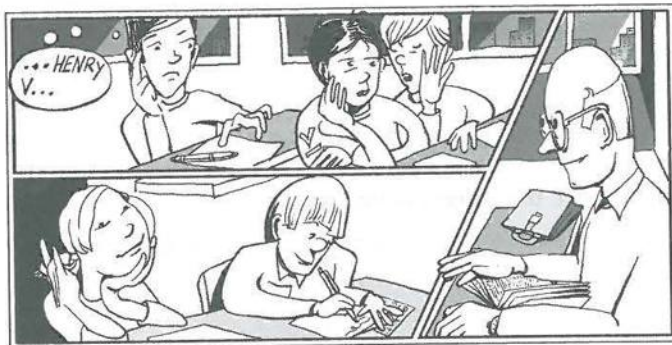
/10

3.2 Grammar

Present Continuous

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verb **be**. In negative sentences, use short forms where possible.
- 0 Hello. My name's John. **Are** you English?
 1 Paul's brother is here. What _____ his name?
 2 John _____ (not) here today. He's at the dentist's.
 3 That boy looks just like you. _____ he your brother?
 4 Thanks for all your help. You _____ a really good friend.
 5 Hi. Nice to meet you. Where _____ you from?
 6 You can't come in. We _____ (not) ready.
 7 I _____ (not) often late for school but sometimes I have problems waking up.
- 2 ★★ Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms where possible.
- I ⁰ **was sitting** (sit) in my classroom. We ¹ _____ (do) a History test. Paul ² _____ (write) quickly. Maggie ³ _____ (not/write). She ⁴ _____ (think) but ⁵ _____ she _____ (think) about the exam or something else? Our teacher ⁶ _____ (watch) us. He's got a book but he ⁷ _____ (not/read) it. Simon and Will ⁸ _____ (talk). They ⁹ _____ (not/try) to do the test at all. They don't care. They always do badly in tests. And I'm ... What ¹⁰ _____ I _____ (do)? I ¹¹ _____ (waste) time. Come on, think ... Henry V ...



- 3 ★★ Complete the questions and answers with the phrases from the box.

'm looking Is Paul wearing Are you using
'm not are you waiting 'm waiting
are you doing he is

Cathy: What ⁰ **are you doing**?

Mum: I ⁰⁰ **was looking** for my phone. I can't find it anywhere.

Conversation 1

Phil: Hi, Ben. Who ^a _____ for?

Ben: I ^b _____ for Elaine. She's late – again.

Conversation 2

Andy: Hey, Stuart, ^a _____ your phone?

Stuart: No, I ^b _____. Do you want to borrow it?

Conversation 3

Belinda: Dave, ^a _____ your coat?

Dave: Yes, ^b _____. He's cold. I don't need it. I'm fine in this sweater.

- 4 ★★ Use the words in brackets to complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

Amy: Hi, Mel. ⁰ **Are you doing** (you/do) anything at the moment?

Mel: Not really. ^a _____ (I/wait) for a phone call.

Amy: From Pete?

Mel: Yes. He's late.

Amy: ^b _____ (he/work/today)?

Mel: ^c Yes, _____ (he/be). Well, I think he is. I hope he isn't out with his friends!

Conversation 2

Beth: Hi, Cathy. ^a _____ (What/you/cook)?

Cathy: A curry. Do you want some?

Beth: No, thanks. ^b _____ (Joe/get/pizza) for us.

Cathy: ^c _____ (Where/he/buy) it?

Beth: I don't know. Why?

Cathy: Because there's a new pizza restaurant near the station. ^d _____ (They/sell/pizzas) for half price this week.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Put the words in the correct order and use the sentences to complete the conversations.

a are / running / you / why?

b a / new / they / building / house / are.

c you / why / sitting / are / down?

d reading / you / what / are?

e e-mails / you / writing / Are?

f school / to / going / I'm.

g Alex / with / tennis / Steve / playing / is

0 Winona: **Why are you running?** What's the hurry?

Daniel: I'm late for work. I don't want to lose my job.

1 Hannah: _____

James: *Game of Thrones*. It's great.

2 Liam: _____

Mum: Bye. See you later.

3 Valerie: _____

Belle: _____

_____ and I'm all alone.

4 Manager: _____

Craig: I'm tired. I need a rest.

5 Mrs Taylor: What are those builders doing?

Mrs Finch: _____

6 Dad: _____

Jack: No, I'm looking for a summer job.

3.3 Listening language practice

Verb + (preposition) + noun collocations

• learn and teach collocations

- 1 Read the three extracts. Complete gaps A–C with the verbs from the box. There are two extra verbs.

[building making learning teaching working]

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•63

Amy: I ¹make / work **with local teachers** and we ²teach / learn **young children** in the village. The lessons are in a very old school, but we are **A _____ a new school!** We work on the building in the afternoons and on Saturdays. It's hard work but I enjoy it. And this place is so beautiful! [...]

Terry: Hi. I'm **B _____ on a gardening project.** We run a vegetable garden next to the local hospital so we can ³grow / eat **fresh vegetables** for the patients. I like ⁴making / working **with my hands** and it's great to work outside. Some of the patients also ⁵help / sleep **in the garden** [...]

Richard: Hello everyone. I ⁶work / teach **with homeless children**, mainly teenagers. I talk to them in the street and try to help them. They can work in a bakery we run together. The young people ⁷do / make **the bread**; they learn to work in a team and they learn practical skills. They ⁸do / make **some money** and they always have something to eat. The kids are great and they're **C _____ me real street Spanish!**

- 2 Choose the correct words 1–8 to complete the recording extracts above.

- 3 Match the beginnings 1–5 to the correct endings a–e.

0 I teach

1 The most important thing is to **work**

2 We can't **grow**

3 Mum keeps promising to teach me to **make**

4 My parents are **building**

5 I haven't got time to **help**

a **flowers** because we haven't got a garden.

b **a chocolate cake.**

c **you with your homework** at the moment.

d **a house** by a lake where they can live when they retire.

e **with nice people.**

f **English** in a small school in a village.

REMEMBER BETTER

It's easier to remember if a collocation comes with a preposition and which preposition it is if you learn collocations as phrases rather than individual words.

- 4 Complete the collocations with the words from the box.

[a house children in money on vegetables with (x2)]

COLLOCATIONS WITH PREPOSITIONS

Work ... ⁰with young people / your hands
... ¹_____ a project
... ²_____ the garden / the kitchen
Help ... you ³_____ your homework

COLLOCATIONS WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

Teach ... ⁴_____ / someone English /
a foreign language
Learn ... English / a foreign language
Make ... bread / a cake / pizza / ⁵_____
Grow ... flowers / plants / ⁶_____
Build ... ⁷_____

WORD STORE 3D

Collocations – learn and teach

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct words.

TEACH / LEARN

A You can ⁰teach your brother to swim.

B You've got a lot of free time. You can ⁰⁰learn to swim.

1 TEACH / LEARN

A We _____ a lot in our Maths lessons.

B Our teachers always _____ us a lot during our lessons. I'm always tired when we finish.

2 TEACHES / LEARNS

A I like the way our English teacher _____ us. She makes the lessons fun and stress free.

B I work very hard at school but my friend always _____ more than me. I don't know why.

3 TEACH / LEARN

A How can I _____ a new language? Are there any good websites you know?

B I can't _____ my brother Spanish. He's a terrible student!

4 TEACHING / LEARNING

A Now that I've got a job, I'm _____ a lot about myself.

B My dad is _____ me how to drive. He gets nervous very quickly when I do something wrong!

3.4 Reading

Part-time jobs • guessing meaning from context • emphasis • collocations

Glossary

miss (v) = not do something or go somewhere because you can't for some reason
businesses (n, pl) = companies or organisations that sell something or offer a service

amounts (n, pl) = quantities of something such as time, money or a substance

- 1 Read the texts. Match sentences 1–10 to the people. Write T (Tess), MA (Matt) or SY (Sylvie). Write N if a statement doesn't match any people.

He/She

- 1 works outside.
- 2 works in the evening.
- 3 does the job because he/she can't find anything else.
- 4 sometimes wears special clothes.
- 5 works in an office.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

- 6 doesn't always earn the same amount of money.
- 7 sometimes works with other people.
- 8 does more than one job.
- 9 works for different businesses.
- 10 can eat when he/she is working.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

Young people and ... money

How can you earn a bit of extra pocket money? Here are some ideas.

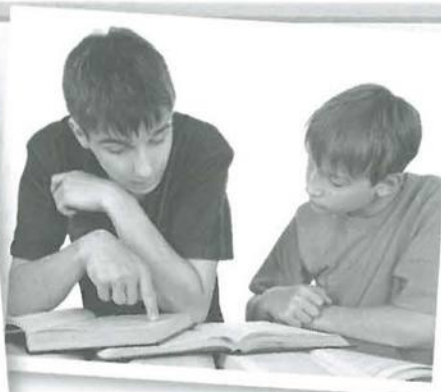
1 Tess, aged 20

I'm a student and, to earn a little bit of money, I do leafleting for local businesses. It's really dull work and quite tiring. I stand in the street all day on Saturday and give people leaflets for pizza restaurants, shops and children's play areas. Sometimes the company I am working for gives me an outfit to put on – like a snail outfit for a French restaurant! I don't get paid much – about £40 for a whole day. Sometimes two of us work together. That's good because we can chat and laugh together.



2 Matt, aged 16

I live in a small town and there aren't many part-time jobs for people of my age. In fact, there aren't any. That's why I work for myself. I do tutoring. I'm very good at Maths and Science and a lot of children need help with these subjects. I go to their homes after school and help them with homework or revision. I only tutor one child a day so I still get home by 5 p.m. I earn different amounts from different people. Some of the families don't have much money so I don't charge much – but I never do it for free! When I have a lot of school work or when exams are coming up, I take a week off.



3 Sylvie, aged 17

I don't have a regular job but, when I need money, I do babysitting. The great thing is that I can say 'Yes' or 'No'. It depends on what my plans are so I never miss any parties or concerts. I always work in the evening and it isn't hard work at all. The children I look after are asleep or getting ready for bed when I arrive. I tell them a story, switch their lights off and, after that, I can just sit and watch television. There is even food for me to eat and, for four hours, I earn about £24.



2 Look at the underlined words in the texts. Decide and circle what part of speech they are: A (adjective), N (noun) or V (verb).

- | | | | | |
|---|----------|---|---|---|
| 1 | dull | A | N | V |
| 2 | outfit | A | N | V |
| 3 | revision | A | N | V |
| 4 | charge | A | N | V |
| 5 | regular | A | N | V |
| 6 | depends | A | N | V |

3 Choose the correct meaning A or B for the words in Exercise 2.

- It's really dull work.
A It's very interesting work.
B It's very boring work.
- Sometimes, companies give me an outfit to put on.
A Sometimes, companies give me some special clothes to wear.
B Sometimes, companies give me something to hold up and show people.
- I help them with homework or revision.
A I help them with homework or project work.
B I help them with homework or studying for exams.
- I don't charge much.
A I don't take so much money.
B I don't work so hard.
- I don't have a regular job.
A My job is different to other people's.
B I don't work at the same time, on the same day every week.
- It depends on what my plans are.
A After I make my plans, I decide when I can work.
B After I get work, I make my plans for my free time.

4 Read text 1 in Exercise 1 again and the email below. Then fill in the information in Jan's notes

From: Hannah

To: Jan

Tess has got a part-time job to earn some extra money. She says the company wants some more people. Do you want to do it? We can work together. You need to phone Mrs King on 79283460.

Jan's Notes

Job: leafletting

Salary: 1 £

Day: 2

Contact person: 3

Contact number: 4

REMEMBER BETTER

When learning new vocabulary, it is important not only to learn the meaning of a new word but also how to pronounce it. You can use Internet dictionaries to check the pronunciation and then use the new words in conversations.

REMEMBER THIS

You can make a statement stronger by adding words like: *very, just, even, etc.:*
I'm tired. - I'm very tired.

5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Find these phrases in the texts and complete them with the missing words.

- ... it isn't hard work _____.
- There is _____ food for me to eat ...
- I can _____ sit and watch television.
- ... about £40 for a _____ day.
- _____, there aren't any.

6 Complete the text with one word in each gap to make the meaning stronger.

Meg: What's wrong?

Tanya: Oh, it's the World Cup. Jake talks about it the ⁰whole time. We don't go out ¹ _____.

Meg: Well, it's only for a month. Why don't you watch a few matches? You might enjoy it.

Tanya: I watch quite a few matches but Jake doesn't ² _____ know I'm there. He ³ _____ sits there looking at the TV.

Meg: Simon's completely different. He doesn't really like any sports. ⁴ _____, he always complains about me when we're out because I usually spend the ⁵ _____ time looking at my mobile phone.

Tanya: Oh well, that's different. Mobiles are important!

WORD STORE 3E

Collocations - money

7 Put the words in the correct order.

- I / salary / earn / a / don't / very / high
I don't earn a very high salary.
- you / a lot / money / a shop assistant / of / as / earn / do
_____ earn _____ ?
- to pay / enough / the rent / doesn't / my brother / earn
_____ earn _____.
- £40 / earn / about / we / a day
_____ earn _____.
- earn / salary / good / does / a / Mrs Fisher
_____ earn _____ ?
- wants / Paul / a new computer / some / to pay / to / earn / money / for
_____ earn _____.
- salary / her job / she loves / Carole / a low / but
_____ earns _____.

3.5 Grammar

Present Simple and Present Continuous

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of **be** or **do**. Use short forms if possible.

- 0 I don't (not) like my job. I work at night and I can never sleep during the day.
- 1 _____ you working at the moment? If not, can you help me in the kitchen?
- 2 Where _____ your mum teach? Are you happy she doesn't teach in our school?
- 3 Mr Brown _____ (not) work here. He works in our office in London.
- 4 Do you work every weekend? Yes, I _____ but only on Saturdays.
- 5 What _____ your brother doing at the moment?
- 6 What _____ you want to do when you finish university?
- 7 Are you phoning the plumber? Yes, I _____. I can't stop this water.

- 2 ★ Complete the sentences with the verbs in capitals in the correct forms. Use short forms if possible.

0 **PLAY**

Dan usually plays tennis on a Saturday but today he's playing golf.

1 **MEET**

We usually ^a _____ outside the cinema but it's raining so we ^b _____ in a café.

2 **HAVE**

My mum ^a _____ a bath at the moment. She usually ^b _____ a shower but she wants to relax today.

3 **DO**

It's seven o'clock in the morning and my brother ^a _____ his homework. I always ^b _____ my homework in the evening.

4 **HAVE**

We usually ^a _____ Maths on Friday afternoon but our teacher is ill so, today, we ^b _____ an extra English lesson.

5 **SEND**

My friends usually ^a _____ me texts but my phone isn't working so they ^b _____ me emails at the moment.

- 3 ★ ★ Complete the questions with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Conversation 1

Jason: Hi, Mark. What ⁰ are you doing (do)?

Mark: I'm cooking dinner. Can you help me? This is really difficult.

Jason: OK. ^a _____ your mum _____ (work) today?

Mark: Yes, she is. She's working late. ^b _____ your mum _____ (work)?

Jason: Yes, she does. She works in a bank. That's why I know how to cook. Right. Let's start.

Conversation 2

Mandy: I can't believe your mum wants you to clean the whole house. ^a _____ Tom _____ (help) you?

Theresa: No, he isn't. He says he's got lots of homework.

Mandy: ^b _____ you _____ (believe) him?

Theresa: No, but my mum does.

Mandy: What ^c _____ you _____ (want) to do later, when the house is clean?

Theresa: I'm not sure. I'll phone and tell you.

Conversation 3

Sam: What ^a _____ you _____ (do)?

Kelly: I'm a teacher. I teach Chemistry.

Sam: Really? I've got a problem with my Chemistry homework. Could you help me?

Kelly: OK. Let me look. Oh, right. Well. It's like this ... ^b _____ you _____ (understand) now?

Sam: Er ... I think so. Can you tell me again?

- 4 ★ ★ ★ Complete the advert with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

⁰ Do you work (you/work) very hard?
¹ _____ (you/earn) a low salary?
Are you unhappy at work?

Danielle ² _____ (work) hard but she isn't unhappy. She ³ _____ (love) her job. She is a waitress at FreshFlavourFoods.

FreshFlavourFoods is a new business but now it ⁴ _____ (grow) very quickly. We ⁵ _____ (open) new restaurants all over the country and we ⁶ _____ (look) for friendly, hard-working people like Danielle to come and work for us. ⁷ _____ (you/look) for a new job? For more details and an online application form, go to **FreshFlavourFoods.abc**

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Complete the email with the verbs from the box in the correct forms. There are two extra verbs.

[do get have need not complain
leave open sit stand]

Hi Kathy,

I'm at work. Don't worry! ⁰ I'm having a break.

I ¹ _____ down with my tablet for ten minutes.

I ² _____ up all day so I ³ _____ this rest.

The restaurant is very busy today but the customers are nice. They ⁴ _____ even when I bring them the wrong food. And they often ⁵ _____ me quite a lot of money. I earn £30 and I often get another £20 from customers.

Oh no. The door ⁶ _____. It's my manager. Time to go back to work. Only another four hours to go!

See you.

Rachel

3.6 Speaking Language Practice

Describing a photo

1 Choose the correct words to complete the description.



¹On / In the photo, there are two men. They are talking and looking at a piece of paper. ²Might be / Maybe there is a problem and they don't know what to do. ³In / On the background, we ⁴do / can see a road. There aren't any cars. It is a new road. The men are helping to build it. ⁵In / On the left of the two men is a camera or other equipment that they use in their work. ⁶Might be / Perhaps it is broken! I think the men enjoy their work. ⁷He's / It's an interesting job.

2 Look at the photo below and match the questions 1–6 to the correct answers a–f.

- 0 Who can you see in this photo?
- 1 What is she doing?
- 2 How old is she?
- 3 What is she wearing?
- 4 How is she feeling?
- 5 Is the work difficult?
- 6 Do you think she likes her job?

g

- a She isn't very young. I think she's about 35 years old.
- b Maybe she's a bit worried about something she's reading but I think that, generally, she is isn't sad.
- c Yes, definitely. She loves it. I am sure she doesn't like working in a boring, stress free job. She needs the excitement.
- d She is looking at a computer. Maybe she's reading a report. Or perhaps she's reading a blog.
- e I think it is very hard. She has a lot of responsibility.
- f She's wearing a smart, dark, summer dress.
- g We can see a woman. I think she is businesswoman and she is working in her office.



3 Read this description of a photo and choose the correct form of the verbs.

This photo ¹shows / is showing a meeting. In the photo, there are six people. They ²sit / are sitting around a large desk. They ³all wear / are all wearing smart clothes. In the background, we can see a view of a big city through the window.

⁴I think / I'm thinking that they ⁵talk / are talking about new ideas. One woman ⁶stands / is standing. Perhaps she is the boss. The men aren't very happy. Perhaps she ⁷tells / is telling them that she isn't happy with their work. Maybe they ⁸don't like / aren't liking having a female boss.

4 Complete the description of the photo below with the words from the box.



asking background happy likes
part-time perhaps photo singing
think wearing writing

In this ⁰photo, we can see a waitress in a restaurant. She is young and she is ¹_____ a uniform and a scarf in her hair. Perhaps she is a student and she works ²_____. There are two customers, a man and a woman. ³_____ they are about 25 years old. They are ⁴_____. Maybe they work near the restaurant and go there after work. The waitress is ⁵_____ the customers what they want to eat and drink. She is ⁶_____ in a notebook.

In the ⁷_____ we can see three musicians. Two men are playing instruments and a woman is ⁸_____. It's a friendly restaurant. I think the waitress ⁹_____ her job. The customers are nice to her but maybe it's difficult to hear the customers because of the music! ¹⁰_____ she makes a lot of mistakes!

3.7 Writing

An email of request

- 1 Complete the email with one word in each gap. First letters are given.



To: Ben Taylor
From: Jane Simpson
Subject: Overtime

Ben,

We have got a ⁰**problem** – a nice problem but we ¹**n**_____ your help.

Our new holidays are very popular and we are getting hundreds of phone calls. Lots of people want information and our telephone sales staff can't answer them all. Could you do me a ²**f**_____? Could you ³**p**_____ find ten or more people to work an extra four hours on our hotline every day this week, starting today! We can offer them £20 an hour for this.

Please ⁴**c**_____ you let me know how many people want the extra work before 2 p.m.? I'm ⁵**s**_____ not to give you more time ⁶**b**_____ I need to tell Mr Collins at our meeting.

⁷**T**_____ very much.
Jane

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make polite requests.

0 favour? / you / a / could / me / do

Could you do me a favour?

1 you / please? / also / for me, / think / check this email / do / you could

2 come / early / to work / you could / do / tomorrow, / think / you / please?

3 could / before 4 p.m.? / comments and suggestions / send it / with your / you please / to me

4 until / you / at work / this evening? / stay / 7 p.m. / could

- 3 Complete the email with the requests from Exercise 2.

Hi Sandra,

I've got a problem. ⁰*Could you do me a favour?* I need some help with the new computer program.

Mr Bryant wants to have it by tomorrow morning.

¹_____ I hope we can do it in a couple of hours.

²_____ I want to send it to Mr Bryant but it has to be perfect.

³_____ Thanks a lot.

I hate writing official letters and it's nice to have your opinion.

One last thing. ⁴_____

Mr Bryant is coming at 9 a.m. and I want to make sure that everything is working OK. Can you be here by 7.30 a.m.? I'll get some breakfast for us.

Thanks a lot.

Helen

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 4 Read the situation below. Write an email of about 100 words to the head waiter/waitress.
You run a restaurant but today you can't come to work. There is a visit from a Health Inspector today and two new waiters start work.
Things you want the head waiter/waitress to do:

- make sure the restaurant is clean
- train the new waiters
- buy fresh food

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

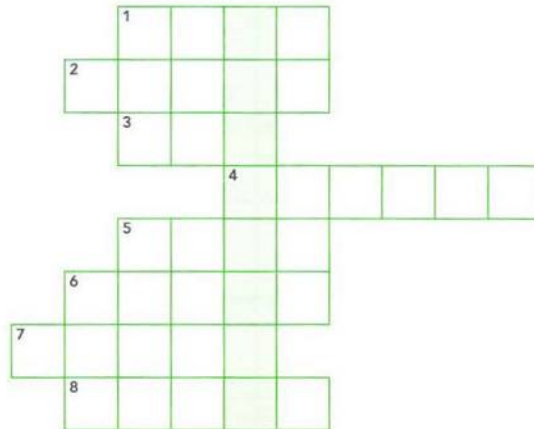
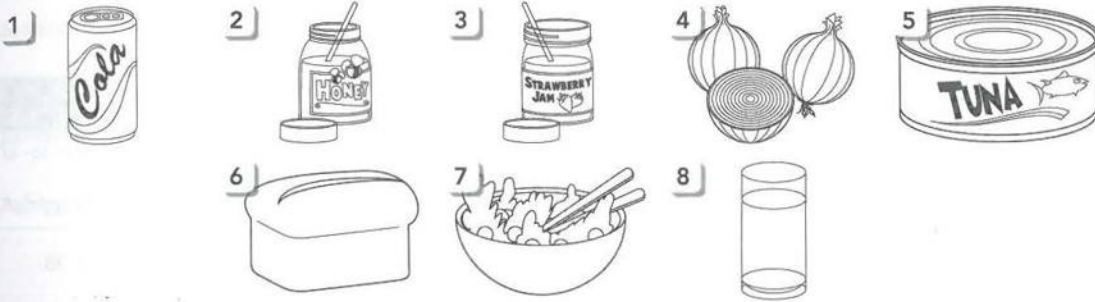
In my email of request:

- I have started with an appropriate greeting, e.g. *Hi Monica*. ☐
- I have explained the problem in the first paragraph. ☐
- In the second paragraph, I have included the requests in a polite and clear way. ☐
- I have explained what needs to be done. ☐
- In the final paragraph I have included my apology and my thanks. ☐
- I have used contractions (e.g. *I'm / aren't / that's*). ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have written 100 words. ☐
- My email is clear and neat. ☐

3.8 Word Practice

Food and work

1 Look at the pictures and complete the puzzle. What's the secret word in the shaded boxes?



2 These people make a lot of mistakes. Can you correct them? Rewrite the correct sentences.

- 1 Sally: 'I go to the supermarket and I get a can to put my shopping in.'
- 2 Richard: 'I'll boil the lettuce and the tomatoes together to make a salad.'
- 3 Helen: 'I'm very thirsty; I want a packet of water.'
- 4 John: 'We need a loaf of ice cream to make the sandwiches.'
- 5 Gemma: 'Put the spaghetti in the hot water to fry.'
- 6 Freddie: 'I'm a vegetarian so I don't eat carrots.'
- 7 Anna: 'Let's get a tub of chocolate crisps for dessert.'
- 8 Sam: 'I always eat cornflakes with ketchup for breakfast.'

3 Match descriptions 1-6 with pictures a-f. Then write the jobs below each picture.

- 1 'I work in a hotel. I give people their room keys and help them with any problems.'
- 2 'I work in a hospital. I wear a white coat but I'm not a doctor.'
- 3 'I work with animals. I get up very early in the morning to look after my sheep and cows.'
- 4 'I teach children. In my classes they learn how to run, jump and kick.'
- 5 'I work with my hands and make people's houses.'
- 6 'I work outside. I plant flowers and water the grass.'

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐


3.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions
😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
3.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about jobs and work.					Students' Book pp. 36–37 Word Store p. 7 Workbook pp. 32–33
3.2	Grammar	I can talk about actions happening at the time of speaking.					Students' Book p. 38 Workbook p. 34
3.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in a radio programme about volunteers abroad.					Students' Book p. 39 Workbook p. 35
3.4	Reading	I can find specific details in texts about dream jobs.					Students' Book pp. 40–41 Workbook pp. 36–37
3.5	Grammar	I can use the Present Simple and Present Continuous to talk about present actions.					Students' Book p. 42 Workbook p. 38
3.6	Speaking	I can describe the people in a photo and say what they are doing.					Students' Book p. 43 Workbook p. 39
3.7	Writing	I can write an email to ask someone to do something.					Students' Book pp. 44–45 Workbook p. 40

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

3.10 Self-check

1 Complete the jobs with one letter in each gap.

Jennie: What do you want to do when you finish your studies?

Ashley: It's difficult. I like acting but I don't want to be an ⁰a c t r e s s. It's hard work and not many people become famous and rich.

Jennie: That's true. I'd like to become an

¹ c t .

Ashley: Our town needs one. The buildings here are horrible! I guess I could get a job for the local newspaper as a ² u l . Then I could write about you.

Jennie: My brother wants to be a car ³ c n . My parents are very upset.

Ashley: Why? It's a good job. He can fix my old car.

Jennie: They want him to go to university. At least he doesn't want to be a ⁴ d . Rose's brother is fighting somewhere. Her parents worry about him all the time.

Ashley: Anyway, first we've got exams and three or four years of university. For now, I'm happy with my job in the Seaview Restaurant. I'm a ⁵ t s . It's great!

/5

2 Complete the jobs with the correct forms of the words in capitals.

0 You could be an engineer (ENGINE) and help to design and build roads, bridges or machines.

1 I'd like to be a famous (LAW) and help people who have legal problems.

2 You like staying in hotels. You could be a (RECEPTION) and spend your whole life in a hotel!

3 I don't want to be a shop (ASSIST) and serve customers. Customers are sometimes so rude.

4 My aunt is an (COUNT) and helps people with their finances and taxes.

5 Steve is a great sports (INSTRUCT). He teaches basketball, volleyball and tennis.

/5

3 Complete the sentences with one word from the box in each gap. There are three extra words.

[badly-paid hard in from long
nine-to-five part-time well-paid with]

I've got a ⁰nine-to-five job so I get home at about six o'clock every evening. Unfortunately, it's a ¹ job and I don't earn a lot so I've also got a ² job for two hours a day in the evening. The evening job is great. I work ³ a supermarket. I work on a checkout and there are always people there – customers and the people I work ⁴ . In my other job, I don't work very ⁵ hours – 8 a day – but it's really boring. Not many people come into the office or phone. I don't know why I'm there, really.

/5

4 Complete the conversations with the verbs in brackets in the Present Continuous.

0 Sam: Hi, Kate. What are you writing (you/write)?

Kate: Hi, Sam. It's a story for a new travel magazine.

1 Mr Bell: (you/make) a cake?

Mrs Bell: Yes, but not for you! It's Mrs Kent's birthday today.

2 Jackie: ^a (I/not/work) today.

Aaron: Why not?

Jackie: The owner of the shop ^b (get) married. The shop is closed for the weekend.

3 Manager: Why ^a (Seth/sit) down?

Waiter: He's tired. He ^b (have) a rest.

/5

5 Complete the email with the words from the box. Use the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

[dream love write work
not want remember]

Hi Sally,

How are you? ⁰Do you remember Jake Samuels? He's in India at the moment. He ¹ as an English teacher for a few weeks. He ² it. He

³ to come home!

He's got a blog. He ⁴ it every day. It's really interesting. And now I ⁵ about life in a foreign country. Maybe we can work somewhere for a year after we finish our studies???

All the best,

Jess

/5

6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

Hi Jess,

Thanks for the email. Of course I remember Jake. I ¹ at his blog right now. You're right. It's amazing. I love the photos, too. Are they really his pictures? Perhaps he ² them on the Internet! I'm joking! They're all selfies of him in amazing places!

Your idea about finding a job is great. My cousin is working in Greece at the moment. She's working ³ a waitress. It's a good ⁴ . She doesn't ⁵ a lot but she gets a room and all her food.

See you soon.

Sally

1 A look B am looking C looks

2 A is finding B find C finds

3 A as B for C with

4 A work B job C paid

5 A earn B paid C pay

/5

Total /30

4

PEOPLE

4.1 Vocabulary

Appearance • personality • adjective order

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the description with the words from the box.

ears eyes eyebrows eyelashes forehead
hair head lips neck mouth nose

This is a description of a person's ⁰head from top to bottom. ¹ grows on the head. It can be short, long, curly or straight. You can even have dreadlocks. At the top front of the head, is the ². If you have a fringe, it can cover a lot or all of this. Under this, are the ³. Some people's are thick and some people's are thin. We see with our ⁴ and, just above these are the ⁵, short hairs that protect them. At the side of the head, we have two ⁶. We can hear things with these. In the centre of the face, we have a ⁷ with two holes in it. We use this to breathe and to smell things. Under this is the ⁸ where we put food when we eat it. Around the mouth, we have two ⁹. Some people put

red or other colours on them.

We usually use them to kiss 😊.

Under the face, we have a

¹⁰ which joins the head to the body.



WORD STORE 4A

Appearance

2 Complete the table with the words from the box in the correct places.

bald blond brown blue fit green grey
handsome medium-length middle-aged pretty
short slim sporty red wavy well-built

Age:	<u>middle-aged</u>
Appearance:	_____
Build:	_____
Hair type:	_____
Hair length:	_____
Hair and eye colour:	_____
Hair colour only:	_____
Eye colour only:	_____

3 Complete the sentences with two opposite adjectives. First letters are given.

- 0 I'm only 54. I'm not old. I'm still young!
- 1 I'm not saying that Chris is ^au . He's got a nice smile, but he's not exactly ^bh with his big nose and ears!
- 2 Helen hasn't really got ^af hair. Her eyebrows are ^bd and that's her real hair colour, too.
- 3 My parents have both got ^ac hair but my hair is ^bs. My sister's hair is wavy.
- 4 At our school, boys can't have very ^al hair. The strange thing is that girls can't have very ^bs hair.
- 5 Why are you worried about what you eat? You aren't ^af. You are really ^bt. I think you should eat more.
- 6 When my friends and I go out, we take a lot of photos but the ^at people always stand in the front so you can never see the ^bs people behind them.

WORD STORE 4B

Adjective order

4 Label the adjectives with the correct numbers.

1 = opinion 2 = size/length 3 = type 4 = colour

Helen: It's boring here. Let's play movie characters.

Elaine: OK. He's an ¹(1) ugly, ²(2) small creature with ³(3) big, ⁴(4) blue eyes and a ⁵(5) big, ⁶(6) bald head.

Helen: Gollum.

Elaine: Very good. Your turn.

Helen: They are ¹(1) tall, ²(2) blue people with ³(3) strange, ⁴(4) big ears.

Elaine: The Na'vi from Avatar. What about this one? He's ¹(1) nice, old man with ²(2) long, ³(3) straight, ⁴(4) grey hair and a long beard.

Helen: Gandalf?

Elaine: It could be. Or Dumbledore.

Helen: He's a ¹(1) friendly, young boy with ²(2) medium-length, ³(3) red hair.

Elaine: Ron Weasley. Try this one. He's a ¹(1) handsome, ²(2) well-built young man. He's got ³(3) long, ⁴(4) straight, ⁵(5) brown hair.

Helen: Jacob from Twilight. My turn.

Elaine: Here's our bus. Come on. You can tell me when you sit down.

REMEMBER BETTER

You can easily remember the correct adjective order if learn the acronym ALSO (amazing, long, straight, orange hair) which represents four description categories given in the right order (opinion, size, type, colour).



WORD STORE 4C

Personality adjectives

- 5 Complete the text with the opposites of the adjectives in brackets. First letters are given.

Application for summer camp volunteers:



Describe yourself:

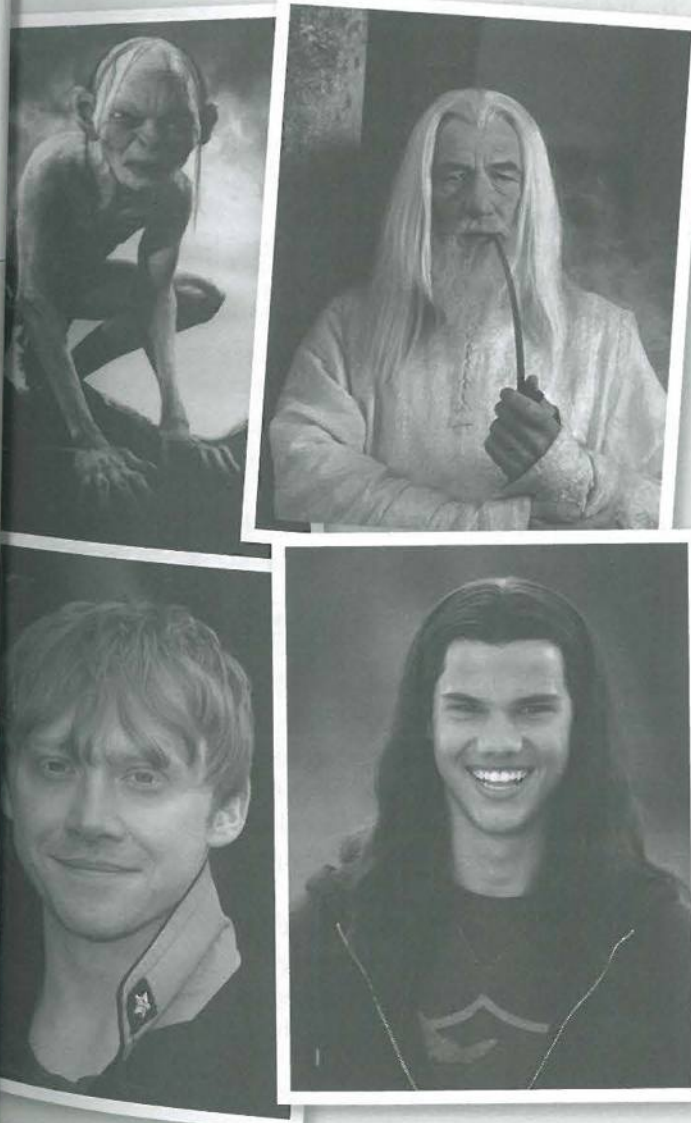
I'm a very ⁰sociable (UNSOCIABLE) person. I love meeting people and talking to them. I'm not at all ¹s_____ (CONFIDENT). At school, I'm quite ²s_____ (FUNNY) and hard-working but, when I'm not working, I have a good sense of humour. I'm ³c_____ (STUPID) and do well with my school work. I am hoping to go to university next year to study law. I'm a very ⁴p_____ (NEGATIVE) person and I try to see the good in people. I think I'm an ⁵i_____ (BORING) person and that most people like me. I care about people and animals and I think I am a ⁶k_____ (UNKIND) person.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- 1 Janet's sister is quite _____. I think she's fourteen.
A young B short C middle-aged
- 2 Emily's got ____ hair. I think it looks great.
A short, curly, blond B curly, blond, short C blond, curly, short
- 3 Mark does a lot of exercise. He is really _____.
A fit B handsome C sociable
- 4 What ____ the new English teacher look like?
A is B does C has
- 5 Don't be cruel about Jake. He's not ugly. He's very _____.
A bald B curly C handsome
- 6 Poor Colin never does well in his exams. He tries hard but he isn't very _____.
A tolerant B interesting C clever
- 7 It's difficult for Jackie to make friends at university because she is so _____.
A shy B naive C tolerant
- 8 Paul never laughs. He is always so _____.
A confident B serious C funny
- 9 What is your new teacher ____?
A look B look like C like
- 10 My mum's hair isn't curly and it isn't straight. It's _____.
A bald B wavy C blond

/10



4.2 Grammar

Comparative and superlative adjectives

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the opposites of the adjectives below.

- 0 serious ≠ funny
 1 fat ≠ _____ 4 intelligent ≠ _____
 2 far ≠ _____ 5 handsome ≠ _____
 3 difficult ≠ _____ 6 interesting ≠ _____

2 ★ Complete the conversation between Emily and Kirsten with the correct comparative forms of the adjectives in brackets.

- E: Two boys want to go to the end of school dance with me.
 K: Who?
 E: Wayne and Theo.
 K: Well, go with Wayne. He's more handsome (handsome) than Theo. He's ¹ _____ (thin) too.
 E: Well, Theo isn't fat! Anyway, Wayne is ² _____ (boring) than Theo. Theo is ³ _____ (funny) than Wayne and he's ⁴ _____ (intelligent). Yes, Wayne is ⁵ _____ (intelligent) than Theo. He doesn't know anything!
 K: ... so, go with Theo.
 E: Well ... Wayne's got a car so he can drive me home. Theo lives ⁶ _____ (far) from me than Wayne and Theo hasn't got a car. I don't want to ask my parents to collect me. It's a difficult decision.
 K: Yes, but it's ⁷ _____ (difficult) than deciding what to wear. That's impossible! Which dress do you think looks best on me?

3 ★ ★ Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the adjectives in capitals.

- 0 My mum is older than my dad but the oldest person in our family is my dad's grandmother. She's 98. **OLD**
 1 The ^a _____ thing I've got is my laptop but I want to buy a 3D television and it is ^b _____ than the laptop. **EXPENSIVE**
 2 I'm not ^a _____ than my mum. She's the ^b _____ person in the house. **SHORT**
 3 Which is the ^a _____ school subject for me? English. My dad's English so I'm bilingual. English is ^b _____ for me than for my friends. **EASY**
 4 I'd like to be ^a _____ than I am but I'll never be the ^b _____ person in my class. Seven people play sports for school teams. **FIT**
 5 Natalie's got ^a _____ hair than me. She's got the ^b _____ hair in our class. Some of the boys call her 'Rapunzel' but she doesn't mind. **LONG**



4 ★ ★ Complete the email with the correct forms of the adjectives in brackets.

Hi Eleanor,
 How are you? Life at university is great. The ⁰best (good) thing is that we've got a lot of free time! I like the lessons, too. The lecturers are ¹ _____ (interesting) than our teachers at school and they are ² _____ (friendly) too. The ³ _____ (nice) lecturer is our psychology teacher. She's great.
 The ⁴ _____ (bad) thing is that we have lectures at 8 a.m. every day! The other problem is my room. It's ⁵ _____ (small) than my bedroom at home. It's ⁶ _____ (tidy) too because my mother isn't here to tell me to put things away! It's a bit unfair because some of the rooms here are ⁷ _____ (big) than the one I've got. Oh well. How is everything with you? Hope your marks are ⁸ _____ (good) than last year!
 See you soon.
 Beverley

5 ★ ★ ★ Use the words in brackets to make full sentences. Add more words if necessary.

- 0 The boy in that photo isn't Desmond. Desmond has got darker hair than him (Desmond / got / dark / hair / him).
 1 I want Craig to win the school prize for best student. ^a _____ (He / intelligent / boy / in the school). ^b _____ (He / friendly / the other people) who are trying to win, too.
 2 We've got a book to read for English. The book I'm reading ^a _____ (funny / and / interesting / the book we are studying). Why do they always choose ^b _____ (boring / books in the world) to read?
 3 **Tim:** Look at that dog. ^a _____ (That / ugly / dog in the world!)
Phil: That's my dog!
Tim: What? Oh, sorry. Sometimes I think ^b _____ (I / stupid / person I know)!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Find the word that is wrong in each sentence and correct it. One sentence is correct.

- 0 You look different. Your hair is shortest. shorter
 1 This is, without doubt, the worse day of my life. _____
 2 Who is the nicer person in your class? _____
 3 Don't worry about what Chloe says. You're much more prettier than she is. _____
 4 This year at school is less difficult than last year. Maybe I'm more intelligent than before! _____
 5 After my holiday, I want to be slimer than I am now. _____
 6 This hotel is farer from the lake than that one. _____

4.3 Listening language practice

It and the -ing form as the subject of a sentence • life events • collocations

- 1 Complete sentences 1–4 with the words in brackets in the correct order.

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•74

Sara: ⁰ The most important life event for a young person is leaving home. (is / life event / The / leaving home. / for a / young person / most important)
The best age is about eighteen or nineteen. Some people only leave home when they get married. But I think ¹ _____

(it / your own / a younger age. / is important / decisions / from / to make) I'm seventeen now and I don't want to go to university. When I leave school, I want to get a job and earn money. Then I can leave home. I want to buy my own flat one day [...]

Mike: I think ² _____
(most / to drive. / is learning / important / the / life event) Now, my parents fetch me from my friends' houses – but they come at 10 o'clock. I'm sixteen – I want to stay out later! I can't wait until next year when I can learn to drive! A driver's licence can also help you get a better job. I think falling in love or buying your first flat are important ... but for me, at the moment, all that is less important than learning to drive.

Grace: For me, ³ _____
(is / going / important. / first date / really / on your) It's that first step in romance. And I think ⁴ _____ (falling / life event. / is / in love / most important / the)
I remember my first date – I was so nervous! I'm fifteen now and my boyfriend Paul and I are in love. Of course, we don't want to get married yet! We want to do lots of things before we get married – study, travel. Anyway, it's better to get married when you're older ... around thirty or later.

REMEMBER THIS

A sentence in English must always have a subject. The pronoun *it* is often used in English for time, day, weather, etc. where in other languages there might not be a clear subject in a sentence: *It's eight o'clock, It's Wednesday, It's raining, It's important to ...*

- 2 Read REMEMBER THIS. Rewrite the sentences correctly.

- 0 Is Sunday today? is it Sunday today?
- 1 Isn't fair! _____
- 2 Is your turn. _____
- 3 Is a nice day. _____
- 4 Is time for bed? _____

- 3 Complete the second sentences so that they have the same meaning as the originals.

- 0 The most important life event is getting a job.
Getting a job is the most important life event.
- 1 It is important to study hard at school.
Studying _____ important.
- 2 Saving money for the future is important.
It _____ future.
- 3 The most important thing in life is being happy.
Being _____ life.
- 4 Getting married is the most important life event.
The _____ married.
- 5 It is important to learn how to cook before you leave home.
Learning _____ important.
- 6 It's fun to look at old photos.
Looking _____ fun.
- 7 Getting up early is difficult in the winter.
It's _____ winter.

WORD STORE 4D

Collocations – life events

- 4 Match verbs 1–6 to the correct endings a–f to make collocations.

0 learn	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	a married
1 go on	<input type="checkbox"/>	b a flat
2 fall in	<input type="checkbox"/>	c job
3 buy	<input type="checkbox"/>	d a date
4 get a	<input type="checkbox"/>	e love
5 get	<input type="checkbox"/>	f home
6 leave	<input type="checkbox"/>	g to drive

- 5 Complete the sentences with the collocations from Exercise 4. One collocation is used twice.

- 0 I'd like to learn to drive but the lessons cost a lot of money.
- 1 Ali is getting ready to _____ with Dave. They're going to a restaurant.
- 2 I'm going to _____ on Saturdays and earn enough money for a really good summer holiday.
- 3 I don't want to _____. I like my bedroom and my dad's cooking.
- 4 I want to _____ when I start working. Then, when I get older, I can sell it and have some money for a house.
- 5 I'd like to _____ when I'm about 30 – if I meet the right person, of course.
- 6 I hope you don't _____ with Jamie. He's not right for you and you won't be happy.
- 7 We can _____ with two bedrooms and live there together. Think of the parties we can have!

4.4 Reading

Shopping for clothes • phrasal verbs • clothes vocabulary

Glossary

bargain (n) = something you can buy cheaply or for less than its usual price

immediately (adv) = at once

join (us) (v) = to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in

match (v) = look attractive together because of a similar colour, pattern, etc.

video tapes (n, pl) = special plastic boxes containing tape where you can record sound and pictures

- 1 Read the texts quickly. Who can you see in the photo? Choose the correct answer A, B or C.

- A Megan and her boyfriend
B Steven and his girlfriend
C Henry and his girlfriend

☐
☐
☐

Shopping and you

There is a popular idea that girls love shopping for clothes. They **shop around** for bargains all day. They **try on** clothes that they don't really want. Finally, they buy a lot of clothes but they don't keep them all. The next week, they **take back** the things they don't like and start all over again! Boys, on the other hand, buy the first thing they see which fits them. Then they don't enter a clothes shop again until their clothes **wear out** or they **grow out of** them, whichever happens first.

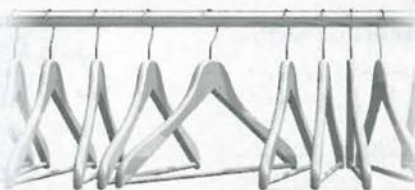
Is this true or not? We asked you for your own true-life experiences and here are a few of your replies.

■ Megan, aged 17, Bristol

In my opinion, it's totally true. I hate shopping for clothes with my boyfriend. ¹_____ He has two ways of reacting when I try on things. At first, he is too honest. He reacts with horror or makes jokes about the clothes I choose. Then, when he gets more bored, he says that everything is great or wonderful. Also, he has no idea about what is fashionable. I buy him things which are a little more elegant but he doesn't wear them. He's slim and looks good in close-fitting jeans but he prefers very loose clothes. Oh well, at least he's got a great personality!

■ Steven, aged 16, Leicester

The idea that boys don't like shopping for clothes is really old-fashioned. Boys now are not like boys from the 1980s. ²_____ They don't all wear shabby clothes. A lot of them want to look nice. What's your next article going to be about? Why don't young people buy video tapes anymore? Most of us live in the 21st century. Come and join us. It's great here!



■ Henry, aged 18, Bath

I love shopping with my girlfriend. We shop in places with a good choice of clothes for men and women. That way, we can both try things on at the same time. My girlfriend helps me a lot. She understands colours better than me. She can see immediately what goes with what and which colours look wrong together. She also finds things that match my personality. ³_____ I **hang up** the clothes she doesn't want and **put back** dresses, skirts and T-shirts in the right place. It's true! She's much more untidy than I am.

2 Read the texts again. Complete gaps 1–3 in the texts with sentences A–E. There are two extra sentences.

- A They spend more on cosmetics than girls and they care just as much about their appearance. ☐
- B In return, I help her. ☐
- C They rarely go shopping together because it causes too many arguments. ☐
- D He is always bored and totally unhelpful. ☐
- E It's something we always agree about. ☐

3 Look at the words in bold in the texts and match them to the definitions.

- 0 put on clothes to see how they look or fit try on
- 1 return something to a shop because you don't want to keep it _____
- 2 become too big for clothes because you are taller or fatter than before _____
- 3 put clothes into a wardrobe or on hooks _____
- 4 compare the price and quality of similar items in different shops before buying something _____
- 5 become too old, dirty or damaged to use _____
- 6 return something to its correct place _____

4 Complete the conversations with the correct forms of the verbs from Exercise 3.

- 1 **Janice:** You should try on those trousers before you buy them because you can't _____ clothes to this shop.
Kelly: Really? What if there's something wrong with them?
Janice: You have to check them carefully here.
- 2 **Imelda:** Don't buy the first thing you find. We should _____ and see if we can get them cheaper somewhere else.
Adrian: I haven't got the strength. I just want to go home.
- 3 **Sam:** These jeans aren't very good quality.
Paul: It doesn't matter. You're growing so quickly, you'll ^a _____ them before they ^b _____.
- 4 **Simon:** Can I borrow these CDs and DVDs?
Lisa: Yes, if you promise to _____ everything in the right place.
- 5 **Nick:** Hi, Mum. I'm home.
Mum: _____ your coat. Don't leave it on the floor.

REMEMBER THIS

Most phrasal verbs in Exercises 3 and 4 collocate with an object. With most of them, the object can go either after the whole phrasal verb, e.g. *try on a shirt*, or between the verb and the preposition, e.g. *try a shirt on*. You can check the position of an object in an entry for every phrasal verb in a dictionary. For example, the entry *take sth off* means that the phrasal verb is separable and the entry *look after sb/sth* means that the phrasal verb is inseparable. Remember, some phrasal verbs don't need an object, e.g. *get up*.

5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Look at these sentences. Are the verbs separable (S), inseparable (I) or is there no object (NO)? Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 0 Try these trousers on. They look great. ☒ S
- 1 Take these shoes back to the shop. ☐
- 2 Tommy grows out of his clothes very quickly. ☐
- 3 Hang your coat up when you come home. ☐
- 4 Can you put my clothes back in my wardrobe? ☐
- 5 I always shop around before I buy anything. ☐
- 6 Cheap clothes wear out quickly so they aren't really a bargain. ☐

WORD STORE 4E

Clothes

6 Look at the photos and choose the correct words.

Stylish or not? What do you think?



She's very trendy. She's wearing a ¹hat / scarf / top on her head, sunglasses and she's got a big ²hat / scarf / sweater round her neck. It's difficult to see what kind of ³top / jacket / suit she's wearing under her leather ⁴jumper / coat / jacket – is it a thin ⁵skirt / jacket / jumper? I don't think it's a ⁶T-shirt / suit / tracksuit. She's wearing

very close-fitting ⁷trousers / tracksuits / dresses – I think they are black jeans. On her feet ... are they ⁸jeans / shoes / socks or ⁹trousers / tracksuits / trainers? It's difficult to say for sure. They aren't boots. They're too small.

She looks cool – and she knows it!

8/10

He looks good. He's wearing a dark ¹⁰skirt / suit / sweater. It isn't too tight or too loose. The jacket and trousers fit him well. He's wearing a white ¹¹shirt / coat / skirt and a dark ¹²scarf / top / tie. His shoes are black. We can't see his ¹³boots / trainers / socks – I'm sure they are dark.

He is stylish and smart. 9/10



4.5 Grammar

have to / don't have to

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the sentences with **can/can't** and the verbs in brackets. Check your answers below.*

STRANGE LAWS FROM AROUND THE WORLD

The USA

- 0 In Haleshorpe, Maryland, you can kiss (kiss) in public.
- 1 In Eureka, Nevada, a man with a moustache _____ (kiss) a woman.
- 2 In Gainesville, Georgia, you _____ (eat) fried chicken with your fingers.
- 3 In Cheyenne, Wyoming, you _____ (have) a shower on a Wednesday.
- 4 In Oklahoma you _____ (wear) boots in bed.
- 5 In Gary, Indiana, you _____ (travel) on public transport after eating onions or garlic.
- 6 In Mesquite, Texas, children _____ (have) strange haircuts.



- 2 ★ Look at the information and complete the sentences with the correct form of **have to** or **don't have to**.

Survey on housework

Please complete the form and leave it in the box in Room 15 before Thursday 3 p.m. Thanks.

Don't write your name.

Male / Female

Tick the things you have to do around the house:

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| Make your bed | ✓ |
| Tidy your room | ✓ |
| Cook dinner | ✗ I can't cook! |
| Take the dog for a walk | ✗ No dog! |
| Wash the car | ✓ |
| Do the washing-up | ✗ We've got a dishwasher 😊 |
| Help in the garden | ✓ |
| Do the shopping | ✗ |

- 0 He has to make his bed.
- 1 He _____ his room.
- 2 He _____ dinner.
- 3 He _____ the dog for a walk.
- 4 He _____ the car.
- 5 He _____ the washing-up.
- 6 He _____ in the garden.
- 7 He _____ the shopping.

- 3 ★★ Complete the questions and short answers.

- Hannah: Hi, Gavyn. Can I ask you about housework?
 0 Do you have to make (you/make) your bed?
 Gavyn: 00 Yes, I do (✓). Every morning.
 Hannah: 1 _____ (you/ tidy your room)?
 Gavyn: 2 _____ (✗) Well, my mum and dad never come into my room. But it is tidy. I like a tidy room.
 Hannah: OK. 3 _____ (you/cook dinner)?
 Gavyn: 4 _____ (✗) but I have to make breakfast sometimes.
 Hannah: 5 _____ (you/take) the dog for a walk?
 Gavyn: 6 _____ (✓). Twice a day. Before and after school.
 Hannah: Do you ...
 Gavyn: 7 _____ (I/answer) these questions? My lesson starts in five minutes!

- 4 ★★★ Complete the conversation with the correct forms of **have to** and the verbs from the box. There are three extra verbs.

[do get have not do not get up
not go not make take stay (x2) wear]

- Juan: I'm glad I'm not at an English school.
 Pia: Why?
 Juan: They have to take important exams when they are 16 and 18. And they 1 _____ a uniform.
 Pia: Yes, but they 2 _____ very early. They start at nine o'clock. We start at eight.
 Juan: But they 3 _____ at school until 4 p.m.
 Pia: My brother 4 _____ at school until 4 p.m. and he 5 _____ to school at 7.45 a.m.
 Juan: Really?
 Pia: Yes. He 6 _____ any housework, though.
 Juan: Why not?
 Pia: Because he 7 _____ so much homework. He doesn't have time for anything else.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Complete the email with the correct form of **have to**.

Hi Lisa,
 Thanks for your email. I'm glad you can come to stay. On Saturday, my mum has to go to work so I 1 _____ cook dinner and look after my little brother but we can go out later. We 2 _____ get a bus – my dad can take us into the town centre.
 Usually, I 3 _____ come home at 10 p.m. but, because you're here, I 4 _____ be at home until midnight.
 What time 5 _____ leave on Sunday? My mum 6 _____ go to work so she can cook us a nice Sunday lunch and then take you to the railway station. Let me know. See you soon.
 Rachel

4.6 Speaking language practice

Shopping for clothes

1 Look at the photo and choose the correct words.



Where is the man?

The man is ¹in / on / at a clothes shop. I think it is in a big shopping centre.

What is he doing?

He is looking at some clothes. I think he ²is wanting / wants to buy a shirt.

Why do you think he wants it?

³Maybe / Might be he has got a new job and he needs a smart shirt. ⁴Possible / Perhaps he is going to a party or on a date and he wants to look nice.

Do you enjoy shopping for clothes? Why?/Why not?

I don't mind ⁵shop / shopping for clothes on my own. I go into the shop and find something very quickly. I try it on and then buy it. I don't like going shopping with my girlfriend. She has to look at everything. She can't decide. It's very boring. She goes to the changing rooms and ⁶wears things / tries things on. She asks me what I think and I always say it's very nice but she never ⁷is believing / believes me!

2 Complete the questions with one word in each gap. Then write down who asks the questions. Write SA for shop assistant or C for customer.

- 0 Have you got any walking boots?
- 1 _____ colour are you looking for?
- 2 How _____ these?
- 3 What _____ are you?
- 4 _____ you help me, please?
- 5 _____ much are they?
- 6 Have you _____ them in a different size?
- 7 _____ are the changing rooms?
- 8 _____ you like to try them on?
- 9 Can I _____ you?
- 10 _____ you want them in a slim fit or a loose fit?
- 11 _____ you got them in a different colour?

C

3 Write the questions in Exercise 2 with the correct answers below.

0 Have you got any walking boots?

Yes, we have. We've got some over here.

1 _____

They're usually £32 but, this week, we're selling them for just £24.99.

2 _____

They're at the back of the shop.

3 _____

Yes, of course. What would you like?

4 _____

Yes, we've got them in a 38, 40, 42 and 44.

5 _____

No, I don't really like the style.

6 _____

Loose, please but not very baggy.

7 _____

I think I'm a 45, or maybe a 46.

8 _____

Yes, please. I'm looking for some jeans.

9 _____

Yes. We've got blue, red and green.

10 _____

Something dark. Black or dark brown.

11 _____

Yes, please. Where are the changing rooms?

4 Complete the conversation with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

at changing colour cost dress exactly
fashion for help how much perfect
really size try

SA: Can I ⁰help you?

Customer: Yes. I'm looking ¹_____ a shirt.

SA: ²_____ about this one? It's the ³_____ this year.

Customer: No, thanks. It's not ⁴_____ what I want. I need something smarter. It's for work.

SA: Oh, I see. What ⁵_____ are you looking for?

Customer: White.

SA: And what ⁶_____ are you?

Customer: I'm a large, I think.

SA: Here you are. Would you like to ⁷_____ this one on? The ⁸_____ rooms are over there.

Customer: Thank you It's ⁹_____. It's ¹⁰_____ what I want. How ¹¹_____ is it?

SA: It's £15 or you can have two for £25.

Customer: Great, I'll take two, please.

4.7 Writing

A personal profile

- 1 Find six more mistakes in the profile. Underline them and write the correct words below.



Hi! I'm Luke.

I have seventeen years old. I'm quite high – 1.82 metres – and I'm sporty and well-built. I've got short, dark hairs and green eyes.

I'm a very sociable person. I love meeting new people and going out with a group of friends. I play a lot of sports and I am very fit and strong. I'm not very serious. I enjoy laughing and joking. My friends say that I am funny but not very hard-working.

I've got a sister. She's youngest than me. She is fifteen years old. She's got dark hair. It is long and wave. She's got big, brown eyes and she's quiet pretty. Boys like her but she isn't interested in them yet. She's more serious from me and she does very well at school.

So, now you know something about me. And my sister.

- 0 am
- 1 _____ 3 _____ 5 _____
- 2 _____ 4 _____ 6 _____

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 0 very / I'm / slim / not
I'm not very slim.
- 1 hair / medium-length / got / dark / I've

- 2 friends / I've / say / my / beautiful / that / eyes / got

- 3 serious / I'm / a / not / person / very

- 4 I / enjoy / going / really / discos / don't / to

- 5 is / than / brother / me / my / taller

- 6 like / really / going / long / walks / for / I

- 3 Complete the profile with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

Hi! I'm Abigail.

I'm fifteen years ⁰old. I'm not ¹v_____ tall – I'm 1.56 metres. I've got medium-length, straight ²h_____ and blue ³e_____.

I'm not a very sociable ⁴p_____. I ⁵e_____ being with my friends but I am shy when I meet new people. I'm clever ⁶b_____ I'm not very confident. I don't know why. I love reading and taking photos. I've got a website with my photos on it.

I haven't got any brothers or ⁷s_____. I've got one cousin. His name is Gary. He's older ⁸t_____ me – he's twenty-five. We don't meet very often so I don't ⁹r_____ know him.

So, now you know something about me.

Send

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 4 You see this notice on an international students' website:

Tell us about a friend you have in another country. What does he/she look like? What does he/she enjoy doing? Post your comment below.

Use the information below to write about your friend, Julia.

Write your post in about 100 words.

Name: Julia

Age: 15

Height: 1.67m

Build: not slim / not fat

Hair: long, brown

Eyes: brown

Personality: confident, positive, funny

Interests: cycling, swimming

Family: 1 sister (Joanna) 18, tall, short brown hair, kind, sociable



SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my profile:

- I have included a description of Julia's appearance. ☐
- I have included information about her personality. ☐
- I have written about her interests. ☐
- I have described Julia's sister, Joanna. ☐
- I have used words such as *very*, *really*, *quite*. ☐
- I have used comparative adjectives to compare Julia and her sister. ☐
- I have used contractions (e.g. *I'm* / *aren't* / *that's*). ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have written 100 words. ☐
- The profile is neat and clear. ☐

4.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 Read the article about jobs. Choose the best word (A, B or C) for each space.

A job tomorrow?

What job do you want to ⁰ _____ in the future? This is a very difficult question and every year teenagers ¹ _____ to answer it. At the moment teenagers all over the world are ² _____ at career information to try to choose a job that is right for them. We spend ³ _____ time at work than we do at home so it's important to make the right decision.

Luckily, teenagers today have a bigger choice of jobs ⁴ _____ their parents. If you look very hard you can find ⁵ _____ really interesting jobs too. For example, perhaps you love ⁶ _____ computer games. Well, you can work ⁷ _____ a computer games tester! You play new games again and again to check that there aren't any problems.

So, if you're looking ⁸ _____ a job, you don't have to do the same as everyone else. Think about your hobbies and your interests and find a job that you can really enjoy!

- | | | |
|----------|-------------|---------|
| 0 A make | B do | C work |
| 1 A has | B got | C have |
| 2 A look | B looking | C looks |
| 3 A most | B more | C many |
| 4 A that | B as | C than |
| 5 A some | B any | C a |
| 6 A play | B playing | C plays |
| 7 A as | B like | C from |
| 8 A at | B for | C after |

TIPS

- 1 The noun is plural.
- 3 This is part of a comparative structure.
- 6 What form is the verb after *love*?

Open cloze

2 Complete the email. Write ONE word for each gap.

Hi Eva,

I ⁰ am writing to send you a photo of me and my best friend. I'm ¹ _____ the right! My friend, Kathy, is wearing a T-shirt with the name of our school. We go ² _____ a lot together and have a lot of fun. Kathy ³ _____ fifteen, like me but she's cleverer ⁴ _____ I am! She always gets ⁵ _____ best marks in the class at English and Maths but she isn't good ⁶ _____ sports! You can meet ⁷ _____ when you come to stay ⁸ _____ me in the summer.

⁹ _____ you got a best friend? What ¹⁰ _____ you like doing together?

Bye for now!

Krystal x

TIPS

- 1 You're looking for the correct preposition.
- 4 You want a word to complete a comparative phrase.
- 7 You need a pronoun here that refers back to Kathy.

4.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions
😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
4.1	Vocabulary	I can describe what people look like and say what they like.					Students' Book pp. 48–49 Word Store p. 9 Workbook pp. 44–45
4.2	Grammar	I can use adjectives to make comparisons.					Students' Book p. 50 Workbook p. 46
4.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in short monologues about important events in life.					Students' Book p. 51 Workbook p. 47
4.4	Reading	I can understand the structure of a text.					Students' Book pp. 52–53 Workbook pp. 48–49
4.5	Grammar	I can talk about obligation with <i>have to</i> and <i>don't have to</i> .					Students' Book p. 54 Workbook p. 50
4.6	Speaking	I can go shopping for clothes.					Students' Book p. 55 Workbook p. 51
4.7	Writing	I can write a personal profile on a blog.					Students' Book pp. 56–57 Workbook p. 52

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

4.10 Self-check

- 1 Complete the text with one word in each gap. You can see a clue for the word in brackets and the first letter of each word.

The people I want to write about are my parents. They are very ⁰positive (not negative) people. They are ¹m_____ (not old and not young). My dad is ²t_____ (not short) and well-built. He has got short, fair hair. My mum is ³q_____ (not very) short and ⁴s_____ (not fat). She has got long, ⁵d_____ (not fair) hair and brown eyes. They are both good-looking.

/5

- 2 Match the words to the definitions. There are four extra words.

[attractive boots naive scarf shy
sociable socks suit tie tolerant]

- 0 A sociable person likes meeting people and talking to them.
1 A _____ person accepts others, even if they are different to them in some way.
2 A _____ is a jacket and trousers that have the same material and colour.
3 A _____ person believes everything that people tell them.
4 A _____ is something you wear around your neck to keep it warm.
5 You wear _____ on your feet and in your shoes.

/5

- 3 Complete the text with the correct forms of the adjectives in brackets.

It's up to you!

George Clooney vs Johnny Depp

You say ...

George Clooney is ⁰more handsome (handsome) than Johnny Depp and he appears in ¹_____ (interesting) films but he is ²_____ (funny) than Johnny Depp. George is often quite funny but Johnny Depp is very funny. Johnny Depp is ³_____ (famous) than George because of the *Pirates of the Caribbean* films. But, some of you also say that the characters Johnny Depp plays in films are often ⁴_____ (stupid) than the characters George Clooney plays.

Overall: Who do you think is the ⁵_____ (good)?

54% say Johnny Depp

46% say George Clooney.

Next page > Ronaldo vs Lionel Messi

/5

- 4 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words from the box. There are two extra words.

[attractive bad clever fit
lazy old positive sociable]

I sometimes get upset at the way my parents treat me compared to my ⁰older brother.

He is the ¹_____ boy in his year. He always wins prizes for his exam results. My marks aren't terrible – they are just ²_____ than his. So, my parents want to know why I can't get A grades like him.

He is also much ³_____ than I am and better at sports. So, my parents think he is perfect but he isn't. He's ⁴_____ about other people than I am. And when there is housework to do, he is the ⁵_____ person in the world!

/5

- 5 Complete the conversation with the correct form of have to and the verbs in brackets.

Alan: I'm going home. See you tomorrow.

Jeff: Are you going already? What time ⁰do you have to be (you/be) at home?

Alan: I'm just tired. ¹_____ (I/get up) early in the morning.

Jeff: Why? You haven't got a job.

Alan: I know but ²_____ (my sister/catch) a train at 8 o'clock. ³_____ (I/drive) her to the railway station.

Jeff: ⁴_____ (you/not/take) her. She could go by bus.

Alan: She's got a heavy suitcase to carry. Anyway, the buses don't start until 8 on a Saturday.

Jeff: That's true. Why ⁵_____ (she/leave) so early?

Alan: She's going to Spain. The plane leaves at 11.

/5

- 6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

Eton College is probably the ⁰_____ school in Britain. To get into the school, a student ¹_____ pass an exam ... and be a boy. There are no girls at the school. The students wear a special uniform with a long jacket, called a morning coat, and a white ²_____ around their necks. Every year, the ³_____ students go to study at Oxford or Cambridge. Sports are important at Eton. Cricket is very popular in the summer but the boys ⁴_____ play that sport. They can choose something else if they prefer. Most Old Etonians are very ⁵_____ people who know what they want in life.

- | | | | |
|---|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 0 | A less famous | B famously | C most famous |
| 1 | A have to | B doesn't have to | C has to |
| 2 | A tie | B shirt | C sweater |
| 3 | A most tolerant | B cleverest | C shyest |
| 4 | A don't have to | B doesn't have to | C have to |
| 5 | A confident | B well-built | C unsociable |

/5

Total /30

5.1 Vocabulary

School • phrases about school • do/get/be

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

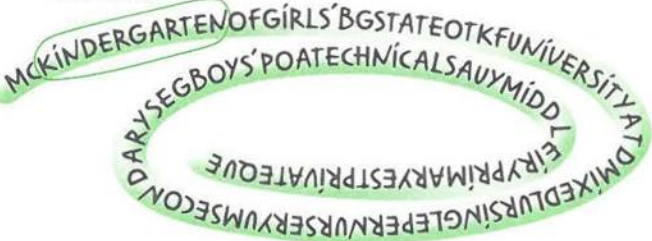
1 Complete the words. First letters are given.

- 0 This classroom object is something the teacher can write on: blackboard
- 1 These subjects are often called IT and PE: ^aI _____
^T _____, ^bP _____ ^E _____
- 2 These two subjects, and Biology, are ^as _____:
^bP _____, ^cC _____
- 3 Sometimes we call these people school students:
^p _____
- 4 This person is the most important person in the school:
^h _____
- 5 You have one of these for every subject. It has information and exercises in it: ^c _____
- 6 This person looks after a class: ^f _____ ^t _____
- 7 You sit at this and put your books on it: ^d _____
- 8 People who are good with numbers like this subject:
^M _____
- 9 This is something a teacher can write on but it can also be used with a computer to show information:
ⁱ _____ ^w _____

WORD STORE 5A

Schools

2 Find the words in the word chain and complete the sentences.



- 1 Is there any difference between a kindergarten and a ^a _____ school? They are both for very young pupils before they go to ^b _____ school.
- 2 In our town, we have a ^a _____ school for 13-15 year olds and a ^b _____ school for older students. They are ^c _____ schools, for boys and girls. My cousin, Mark, goes to a ^d _____ school and his sister goes to a ^e _____ school. I'm glad I don't go to a ^f _____ - sex school. I like having girls in my class.
- 3 I go to a ^a _____ school because it is very expensive to go to a ^b _____ school.
- 4 I don't want to go to ^a _____ when I leave school. I want to go to a ^b _____ college and learn to be an electrician.

REMEMBER THIS

In English the school for teenagers aged 13–15 is called a middle school. Gymnasium (gym for short) is the name of a place where you can exercise.

WORD STORE 5B

Phrases about school

3 Complete the blog with the verbs from the box in the correct form. You need to use some verbs twice.

be	come	do	fail	get
leave	miss	pass	start	



A new school year

My mum and dad often move and it's difficult to ⁰start school in a new place every year. Sometimes I don't ¹ _____ very well but, this year, I want to have a good year.

This year, I want to:

make lots of friends

- ² _____ on time for lessons,
³ _____ good marks for my homework,
⁴ _____ all my exams,
⁵ _____ to lessons with a smile on my face and all my books in my bag!

This year, I don't want to:

- ⁶ _____ any classes,
⁷ _____ badly,
⁸ _____ bad marks,
⁹ _____ my exams,
¹⁰ _____ late for lessons,

Forget my books.

Can I do it? When I ¹¹ _____ school next year, I want to go to university. I can't do that with bad marks.

4 Complete the conversation with one verb in each gap.



J: Simon, this is a letter from your teacher.

S: Oh.

J: She says you sometimes ⁰miss lessons. Is this true?

S: Well, once or twice, yes.

J: And you ¹_____ never on time. Why not? You leave here at 8:15. Where do you go?

S: I meet my friends. Sometimes we walk slowly because we are talking. But, I ²_____ well at school. I always ³_____ good marks for my homework.

J: I know, I know. Your teacher is happy with your work but you can't be late for school. People who ⁴_____ school and get a job can't be late in the morning.

S: I understand that. Don't worry. I can change. Anyway, I don't want a job yet. I want to ⁵_____ my exams, stay at school for two more years and then go to university.

J: Good. You can tell Mrs Taylor that when we meet her.

S: We???

J: Yes, she wants to talk to us both tomorrow at 4 p.m. Don't be late!

WORD STORE 5C

Collocations – do, get and be

5 Complete the text with one word in each gap. You may need to use some words more than once.

Children and education

Advice needed

Our son, Tom is doing ⁰well at school. We are very ¹_____ of him. He is always on ²_____ for lessons, in fact, he is often ten or fifteen minutes ³_____. He always does his ⁴_____ in all his subjects. He does his ⁵_____ as soon as he gets home and he always gets good ⁶_____, even in Maths, which is his weakest subject.

Unfortunately, our daughter, Karen, isn't such a good student. She doesn't always do her ⁷_____ in the evening and she usually does ⁸_____ in her exams. She is never on ⁹_____ for school and she and her friends are often ¹⁰_____ for other things like basketball practice. She gets bad ¹¹_____ in all her subjects, except for French, which she loves. She wants to study there and thinks that French students get a better ¹²_____ than English ones.

How can we make Karen work harder and be more like Tom? Any ideas?

6 Match the beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f) of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 My three year old sister | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 My parents can't afford to | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 I love science and I usually get | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 My brother is never | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Maths is not my favourite subject but I always do | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 I need to study hard tonight – I want to pass | <input type="checkbox"/> |
-
- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| a | send me to a private school. |
| b | late for school. |
| c | loves her nursery. |
| d | good marks for my Biology projects. |
| e | the French exam tomorrow. |
| f | my best. |

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

7 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 Don't worry about your exams. Just ____ your best. | A do | B get | C be |
| 2 In the UK, children go to ____ school when they are 13. | A gymnasium | B high | C middle |
| 3 About 20 percent of the pupils ____ their exams every year. | A miss | B fail | C lose |
| 4 My brother wants to ____ school when he is 16. | A leave | B miss | C start |
| 5 Come on. Let's run to school. We don't want to ____ late. | A do | B get | C be |
| 6 I never ____ lessons because the school always writes to tell your parents. | A fail | B leave from | C miss |
| 7 Paul wants to be a mechanic so he's studying at a ____ college. | A academy | B university | C technical |
| 8 Kelly is always ____ time for school but she is always late when we go out! | A early | B on | C at |
| 9 It's important to ____ a good education so that you can find a good job. | A get | B do | C be |
| 10 There aren't any boys here. It's a ____ - sex school. | A girl's | B single | C mixed |

/10

5.2 Grammar

must/mustn't, should/shouldn't

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the email with the correct forms of **have to** and the verbs in brackets.

Hi Jo,

I ⁰ have to make (make) a decision about next year. I can stay here or go to the same sixth form college as you. So, I've got a few questions.

Firstly, ¹ _____ (you/wear) a uniform? Sixth formers at our school ² _____ (wear) a uniform but they ³ _____ (look) smart – they can't wear jeans, for example.

Next question, how much homework ⁴ _____ (you/do) every day? A friend who is a year older than me here ⁵ _____ (do) about three hours of homework a day but he ⁶ _____ (not/do) anything at the weekend. I think that's all for now.

Thanks.
Seth

- 2 ★ Read the conversation between Cathy and Damien. Choose the correct words.

C: I'm not sure I want to be in the school play.

D: Well, you ¹ don't have to be / mustn't be in it. It's your choice but it's great fun. Of course, it takes a lot of time. People who want to be in the play ² must / mustn't go to Drama Club every Tuesday and Thursday after school. They ³ don't have to / must learn their words and they ⁴ mustn't / don't have to be late because everyone has to wait for them. Of course, you ⁵ mustn't / don't have to act. You can help with the music or the clothes.

C: What do you think? ⁶ I should / Should I do it?

D: Of course. You ⁷ must / don't have to see Mrs Green at lunchtime and tell her. She needs the list of names today.

- 3 ★★ Choose the correct options A, B or C.

Hi Sally,

Well, I'm in the school play! I ¹ _____ to say much. The first meeting is tomorrow. We ² _____ be late. Mrs Green says that a good actor ³ _____ be well-organised and brave. That's why, in the first meeting, we all have to stand in front of the group and say some lines from a play. Luckily, we ⁴ _____ to sing! I ⁵ _____ find something that I know well – maybe something from *Romeo and Juliet*. I'm studying that in English.

Anyway, I ⁶ _____ do my homework now. See you soon.

Cathy

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1 A mustn't | B shouldn't | C don't have |
| 2 A don't have to | B mustn't | C have to |
| 3 A have to | B shouldn't | C must |
| 4 A don't have | B mustn't | C have to |
| 5 A shouldn't | B mustn't | C should |
| 6 A mustn't | B don't have to | C must |

- 4 ★★★ Complete the conversation with the phrases from the box. There are three extra phrases.

don't have to speak don't have to wait must be
must say should get should go should I do
should I go should I say should look should sit
should wait shouldn't look shouldn't wait

Mrs Green: Cathy, your turn.

Cathy: This is from *Romeo and Juliet*. 'A rose by any other name would smell as sweet.'

Mrs Green: You ⁰ must say it louder. I can't hear you. And you ¹ _____ at us, not at the floor.

Cathy: ² _____ it again?

Mrs Green: Yes, please.

Cathy: Er ... er ... 'A sweet by any other name would smell like a rose.'

Mrs Green: Stop, stop. I think you ³ _____ for a few minutes. You're very nervous. Melanie, you go next.

Cathy: I feel terrible. What ⁴ _____ ?
⁵ _____ home and forget about the school play?

Damien: No, you shouldn't. You ⁶ _____ here with me and watch the others. Look, they're making mistakes too. You ⁷ _____ again today. You can ask Mrs Green if you can do it on Thursday.

Cathy: No, I ⁸ _____ . I ⁹ _____ brave and try again now. It's like falling off a horse. You ¹⁰ _____ back on immediately. The only problem is ... Doing this is worse than falling off a horse!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Complete the sentences with the appropriate forms of modal verbs. You can't use the words in brackets.

- You shouldn't go to university just because your parents think it's a good idea. Do what is best for you. (don't)
- We _____ finish our project tonight. We can give it to our teacher next Monday. (must)
- You _____ start doing homework soon. It's getting late. (must)
- You _____ write in this book. It's a library book. (shouldn't)
- Dan, you _____ feed your cat only twice a day. It's very fat. (should)
- You _____ do all the housework. Ask your children to help you. (don't)

/5

5.3 Listening language practice

Verb+noun collocations • useful prepositions • places in school

- 1 Complete gaps 1–7 in the conversation with the verbs from the box. There are three extra verbs.

borrow chat do get give have
make ~~meet~~ play put use

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•86

Mark: Wow! It's really crowded in here!

Jane: That's because it's people's favourite place. We all ⁰~~meet~~ our friends here and the teachers don't come because it's so noisy!

Mark: Is it cheap here?

Jane: Oh yes, really cheap. A full meal costs about £2.50 and of course, you can ¹_____ snacks for around £1.00. A coca cola is about 1.20.

Mark: But there isn't anywhere to sit down – it's so busy.

Jane: Some people take their food into the park and eat it there. I usually go and sit in the playground and ²_____ to my friends. OK, now let's go in here. Now we mustn't talk loudly inside and you mustn't ³_____ your mobile phone. Switched off?

Mark: Yes. It's very big, and there are lots of books. Can you take them out?

Jane: Yes, you can ⁴_____ books for three days, so you can read them at home. You can also borrow DVDs and CDs for a week. You can use the computers too.

Mark: That's good. Where next?

Jane: Well, now we're in the biggest place in the school. We ⁵_____ a big school meeting here every morning before classes – it's called assembly. Everyone has to come – that's 350 people! Twenty of those are teachers, the rest students. The head teacher gives us important information. Some people come to ⁶_____ us speeches as well.

Mark: Do you ever have lessons in here?

Jane: Not really, apart from drama classes. Some after school clubs happen in here too. Of course, we usually ⁷_____ exams in here too – but let's not think about that now!

Mark: No, that's a good idea. I think it's a great school. I'm glad I'm coming!

REMEMBER BETTER

Learning collocations is a good way to expand your vocabulary (e.g. use / surf / access the Internet) and make you sound natural and authentic.

- 3 Cross out the words which **don't** collocate with the verbs. Use a dictionary if necessary.

0 do	homework / dinner / your best
1 get	a phone call / a job / a bank
2 borrow	money from someone / a DVD from a friend / an email from someone
3 use	a computer / a calculator / a message
4 give	a promise / advice / your opinion
5 have	a meeting / a party / a promise
6 meet	your sister / a new teacher / a book

WORD STORE 5D

Places in a school

- 4 Complete the words. First letters are given.



Noah: Excuse me, it's my first day here. I have to borrow some books. Where's the school ⁰library?

Jayne: Walk along this ¹c_____. Be quiet when you go past the ²s_____ r_____. Don't wake the teachers up!

Noah: Eh?

Jayne: Sorry. Just joking. So, go past the ³c_____ and the lovely smell of chips, then the ⁴s_____ l_____. Careful, I think Class 8C are doing Chemistry in there at the moment. Go upstairs, walk by the ⁵h_____ – someone is giving a speech to all the year 12 students now – and then go past the ⁶g_____. The students aren't in there today. They're all outside playing football on the ⁷s_____ f_____. So, at the top of the stairs, turn right. That's room 21 and the library is next to it. OK?

Noah: I think so. Thanks. Err ...

Jayne: Where are you going? That's the wrong way. That's the door to the ⁸p_____. You can't go outside now. It isn't break time. OK, come with me.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct proposition.

- Open the windows. It's really hot in here!
- I feel very tired. I need to sit _____.
- The play is starting – switch _____ your phone!
- Can I borrow your phone _____ five minutes, please?
- There are twenty books on my desk. Ten _____ those are yours!
- I like all the subjects at school, apart _____ Maths.
- I hate exams! I don't want to think _____ them now!

5.4 Reading

Alternative education • phrases with prepositions • word families

Glossary

unprepared (adj) = not ready to deal with something
develop (v) = to grow or change into something bigger, stronger, or more advanced

- 1 Read the text quickly and decide which classroom (A or B) is more similar to the Waldorf School.

A ☐

B ☐

- 2 Read the text again. Are statements 1–6 right (R), wrong (W) or does the text not say (DS)?

- 1 The writer gives four examples of how students and teachers can use technology. ☐
- 2 The staff and parents agree about not using technology at school. ☐
- 3 The children who attend the Waldorf School are not allowed to use computers at home. ☐
- 4 Students mustn't leave their desks during lessons. ☐
- 5 The students get better jobs after studying at these schools. ☐
- 6 The lessons at the school are interesting for the students. ☐
- 7 The writer says that 160 students go to the Waldorf School of the Peninsula. ☐



Alternative Education

Technology is changing our lives and many people believe that school pupils should all have laptops, look at interactive whiteboards and do all their homework online. Los Altos, California, is a city in an area known as 'Silicon Valley' because it is home to many technology companies such as Google, Apple, Yahoo and Hewlett-Packard. So the Waldorf School of the Peninsula is a bit of a surprise.

The staff and parents here believe that there shouldn't be any technology in our schools. There are no computers in the classrooms. No screens at all. The teachers write on blackboards and the classrooms are full of books, posters and magazines. There are wooden desks and pupils write on paper with pens and pencils. This doesn't mean that the teachers just stand at the front of the class and the students quietly do exercises. They get up and do fun activities and play games that help them to learn and remember.

Are the methods successful? It's difficult to say for sure. Most of the students succeed in their exams but is this success because of the school or because they have parents who think education is important? People who like the school say that the students use their imagination more. The teachers certainly work hard to create imaginative lessons and the students enjoy them. Parents also say that learning without computers helps the children to develop better problem-solving skills and this actually helps them to use computers later in life.

However, others disagree. They say that students who study at the school are unprepared for our technological world when they leave. One thing is for sure. The schools are very popular. There are 160 Waldorf schools in the USA now and parents pay about \$20,000 a year to educate their children at them.

What do you think? Do you agree with the parents or do you think students should use technology at school?

REMEMBER BETTER

Using words formed from the same base word can make your statements more varied and help you avoid repeating the same word.

Our school basketball team is usually very **successful**. We don't always **succeed** in competitions but we have more **successes** than failures.

- 3 Complete the table with the underlined words in the text. Two of the words are not in the text. Use a dictionary, if necessary, to find them.

	Adjective	Noun	Verb
1	<u>successful</u>		
2			imagine
3	educated / al		
4	-	(dis) ___ ment	___ / ___

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in capitals.

1 SUCCESS

Our school basketball team is very successful and wins almost all their matches.

- A Because of our students' _____ in their exams, lots of parents want to send their children here.
B Alex is very ambitious. He always wants to _____ in everything he does.

2 EDUCATE

- A _____ should be free for all students at school and university.
B We don't need to go to school. Our parents can _____ us at home.
C There are a lot of _____ videos on YouTube, but you have to look for them carefully!
D My mum likes my new boyfriend. He's polite, smart and well-_____.

3 IMAGINE

- A You've got a great _____. You should write books for children.
B This is a very interesting and _____ piece of writing. Can we put it in the school magazine?

4 AGREE

- A I'm sorry but I _____ with you about school sports. I think students should do some kind of exercise, even at university.
B I don't think pupils should get homework until they are 12 years old. Do you _____?
C My parents and I are having a _____ about what time I come home on Friday evenings.

- 5 Look at the sentences from the text and choose the correct meanings A or B.

- 1 Los Altos, California, is a city in an area known as 'Silicon Valley'.
A Some people call the area 'Silicon Valley'.
B The area is officially named 'Silicon Valley'.
2 ... it is home to many technology companies such as Google, Apple, Yahoo and Hewlett-Packard.
A ... there are a number of technology companies in the area. Four of these are Google, Apple, Yahoo and Hewlett-Packard.
B ... there are four technology companies in the area: Google, Apple, Yahoo and Hewlett-Packard.
3 The Waldorf School of the Peninsula is a bit of a surprise.
A The school is different to how people expect it to be.
B The school is similar to the local companies.
4 It's difficult to say for sure.
A The writer doesn't want to say.
B The writer doesn't really know.

- 6 Complete the sentences with one of the underlined phrases from Exercise 5 in each gap.

- 0 I'm known as Spiderman at school because I'm very good at climbing in the gym.
1 I want to go to the party but I can't _____ that I'm going. I have to ask my parents first.
2 The end of this film is _____ but I can't tell you what happens. Go and see it!
3 We do a lot of different sports at school, _____ football, cricket, volleyball and running.

WORD STORE 5E

Compound nouns

- 7 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

BLOG

School (again!)

So, it's March. We have a lot of work to do and I don't get a lot of free ¹ _____. Summer is still a long way away and we are all a bit tired. Luckily, I go to a great school and have great teachers. They organise a lot of cultural ² _____ like concerts, talks and plays. They're OK but I prefer doing something outside school. Our Science teacher sometimes takes us on museum ³ _____. They're really great and much more interesting than lessons. Now, there are two more ideas for us. Our form teacher wants to take us on a camping ⁴ _____ in June. It sounds fun but I like sleeping in a real bed! Another idea is a home ⁵ _____ with a French family for two weeks after our end-of-year exams. I really want to go on one of them! I'd like a family in the south of France, on the Mediterranean because I love doing water ⁶ _____ such as swimming and sailing.

A positive blog entry about school for once – that's a bit of a surprise!

- | | | |
|------------|----------|----------|
| 1 A trips | B time | C events |
| 2 A events | B tours | C time |
| 3 A tours | B stays | C events |
| 4 A stay | B trip | C time |
| 5 A trip | B tour | C stay |
| 6 A events | B sports | C tours |

5.5 Grammar

Past Simple: was/were, could

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- Complete the sentences with the correct positive or negative form of the verb **be** or **can**.
 - My brother is only three years old but he can swim quite well.
 - It ^a _____ three o'clock in the morning. I ^b _____ in bed but I ^c _____ sleep.
 - Hey, Jackie? ^a _____ you swim? ^b _____ you interested in a job? The swimming pool wants summer workers.
 - Louis ^a _____ very good at Spanish. He ^b _____ say 'Hello', he ^c _____ count to ten and he doesn't know what 'Gracias' means! He ^d _____ the worst student in the class!
 - My mum and dad ^a _____ angry with me because of my Maths test result. I work hard but I ^b _____ understand the Maths we are doing at the moment.

- ★ Complete the text with the past forms of the verbs in brackets.

AMAZING CHILDREN

William Sidis ⁰ was (be) born in New York in 1898. He ¹ _____ (can) speak more than ten languages and when he ² _____ (be) eleven, he ³ _____ (be) already a student at Harvard University. He ⁴ _____ (be) a professor when he ⁵ _____ (be) twenty. He ⁶ _____ (be) amazing but, unfortunately, he ⁷ _____ (not/be) a happy child.

- ★★ Complete the conversation between Elaine and her grandma with the correct past forms of the verb **be** or **can**.

- E: Hi, Grandma. What are those photos?
 G: They're my old photos from when I ⁰ was a teenager like you.
 E: Wow. Is that your motorbike?
 G: No, it ¹ _____ my brother's.
 E: ² _____ you drive?
 G: Not then. Driving lessons ³ _____ expensive and my parents ⁴ _____ pay for them.
 E: Oh, I like this one. Where ⁵ _____ you?
 G: We ⁶ _____ in Wales on a school trip. The weather ⁷ _____ very good – there ⁸ _____ lots of rain – but we ⁹ _____ very happy in the mountains. Every day ¹⁰ _____ the same – breakfast at 8 a.m., a 20-km walk and back to the hostel in the evening. We ¹¹ _____ so tired, we ¹² _____ move in the evenings. There ¹³ _____ any discos or parties – we ¹⁴ _____ in bed before 9 p.m.!
- E: ¹⁵ _____ you with grandfather then?
 G: No, I ¹⁶ _____. He ¹⁷ _____ at the same school as me. Just a minute, ah, here's one of your grandfather and me. We ¹⁸ _____ twenty-one or twenty-two then ...

- ★★★ Use the cues in brackets to make full questions and answers.

Conversation 1: Marcus and Sam

M: Hi, Sam. ⁰ Where were you yesterday (where/you/ yesterday)?

S: Hi. Sorry. ^a _____ (I/tired). ^b _____ (I/not/phone) you because ^c _____ (my phone/in) my bag at school.

Conversation 2: Jenny and Beverley

J: ^a _____ (David/really horrible) to me yesterday.

B: Really? Why?

J: ^b _____ (We/with) Ellen and Mark at the Sports Centre for a game of tennis. You know I can't play any ball sports. ^c _____ (I/not/hit) the ball! ^d _____ (David/not/happy) with me! He hates losing.

Conversation 3: Mr Smith and Kate

S: ^a _____ (Why/you late) to school this morning?

K: ^b _____ (My dad/not/find) his car keys.

S: ^c _____ (Where/they)?

K: ^d _____ (They/on) the bathroom cupboard!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- were / yesterday? / why / sad / you
Why were you sad yesterday?
- ten / swim? / when / could / were / you / you
- night? / angry / why / was / Carole / last
- homework. / Simon / with / couldn't / my / help / me
- the guitar / when / Nikki / play / primary / could / she / in / school. / was
- home / friends / the weekend. / my / at / weren't / at
- couldn't / wallet / I / anywhere. / find / my

16



5.6 Speaking language practice

Organising a trip

- 1 Look at the photo. Complete the answers with the words from the box.

background example exciting firstly
looks ~~modern~~ next top whole

- 1 What can you see in the photo?

I can see a big, ⁰modern tower. It's ^a_____ to the sea. There are some boats in the ^b_____ and some buildings. It ^c_____ like a big city.

- 2 Why is something like this popular with tourists?

There are a few reasons. ^a_____, of course, you get a great view from the ^b_____. You can see the town, people, boats. In cities, you can see all the famous buildings and take great photos. In Paris, for ^c_____, from the Eiffel Tower you can see the Arc de Triomphe, Notre Dame, and other places. Also, it is ^d_____ to be high up.

- 3 Do you like climbing towers when you are on holiday? Why?/Why not?

Oh yes. We always go up towers. The Eiffel Tower, The Leaning Tower of Pisa and smaller towers. The best is the Campanile di San Marco in Venice. You can see the _____ city and the canals. It's amazing.

- 2 Look at the information about the Spinnaker Tower in Portsmouth and complete the answers (A-G).

Useful information

Open: 10 a.m.-6 p.m. every day

Tickets: Adults £8.95 (online price £7.60)
Children (3-15) 6.95 (online price £5.90)
Under 3s - Free
Family ticket: £24.50

Discounts for groups of 15 or more people.

Price includes a free audio guide.

See our website for more details.

We are also on Facebook and Twitter.

Address: Gunwharf Quay, Portsmouth.

- A Yes, there is. A family ticket costs twenty-⁰four pounds, fifty.
B It's in ¹_____ Quay.
C They are eight pounds ²_____ - _____ for adults and ³_____ pounds ninety-five for children aged 3 to 15. It is free for children under the age of 3.
D Yes, there are. They are for groups of at least ⁴_____ people.
E Yes, you can, and prices are lower. For example an adult ticket costs ⁵_____ pounds ⁶_____ online, a saving of 1.35 on the normal price.
F No, I'm afraid there aren't but we have free ⁷_____ guides for all visitors.
G The tower opens at ⁸_____ o'clock in the morning and closes at ⁹_____ o'clock in the evening.



- 3 Match questions 1-6 to answers A-F from Exercise 2.

- 0 What are the opening times?
1 Are there any discounts for groups?
2 Are there any guided tours?
3 Can I book online?
4 Where is the tower exactly?
5 How much are the tickets?
6 Is there a cheaper ticket for families?

4
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

- 4 Complete the conversation (1-8) below with sentences A-H.

- A Customer: Where is the zoo ^ae_____?
B Customer: How much does it ^bc_____ to get in?
C Customer: Thanks very ^cm_____.
D Customer: Can I ^db_____ online?
E Assistant: You're ^ew_____.
F Assistant: We are open every day from nine o'clock until six o'clock.
G Assistant: What would you ^fl_____ to know?
H Assistant: Yes, there is. You can download it from our website and use it to find out more information about the animals in the zoo as you are walking round.
I Customer: Yes. I'd like some information about the zoo.

Assistant: Can I ⁰h_____ help you?

0 I

1 _____

Customer: What are your ⁹o_____ times?

2 _____

3 _____

Assistant: ^hT_____ are £6.50 for adults aged 18 and over and £5.00 for under 18s.

4 _____

Assistant: No, I'm afraid not. You have to buy them from the ticket office.

Customer: Is there an app?

5 _____

6 _____

Assistant: It's in Park Road. Go into the park and the zoo is on your left.

7 _____

8 _____

- 5 Complete the dialogue in Exercise 4 with one word in each gap a-h. First letters are given.

5.7 Writing

A personal email

- 1 Read the email and choose the correct words a-d.
- 2 Complete the email with the words and phrases from the box. There are two extra words or phrases.

about you can't wait else fine hope
life miss other news plans soon
things up to you your news

Subject: Hello from Spain

Attachment: jpeg picture - Fernando

Hi Stella,

How are ⁰you? I ¹ you're OK. How's everyone at school?

I'm getting on ² here in Spain. I couldn't understand anyone at first ^aso / because my Spanish was so bad ^bbut / and it is getting better now. The food is great, the school is nice ^cbut / and the people are friendly ^dbecause / so I'm very happy. My ³ is that I'm in the volleyball team here. We play all over Spain. We were in Barcelona last weekend. It was great.

What ⁴ ? Well, there's a boy called Fernando. He's very nice - I'm sending his photo with this email.

How ⁵ ? How's ⁶ ? What are you ⁷ ? How are Beth and Fiona and the other girls? Do you still go to the disco every Friday? What are your ⁸ for the summer? Can you come to Spain to visit me?

I ⁹ to hear all your news. I ¹⁰ you all - but not English weather!

Write ¹¹ .

Vicky



- 3 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

0 How are you?

How are **things**?

1 What are you doing at the moment?

What are you ^au to ^bt at the moment?

2 I'm getting on OK.

I'm getting on **f** .

3 Write soon.

I ^ah to ^bh from you soon.

I ^c to ^dw to hear all your news.

4 I'm also ...

My ^ao ^bn is that ...

5 It would be great to ...

I'd I to ...

- 4 Complete the email with *and*, *but*, *so* and *because*.

Hi Tim,

Thanks for your email. How are things? I hope you aren't too busy with school work.

I'm getting on OK. I was ill for a few days ⁰but I'm fine now. It was nice to be at home at first ¹ it was boring after a while ² there was nothing to do.

We've got exams soon ³ I'm working hard. What else? I'm doing a lot of sport ⁴ I'm also going out with a girl from my class. Her name's Elaine. She lives near me ⁵ I see her a lot. My parents are a bit worried ⁶ I'm always tired ⁷ I'm happy ☺.

How about you? What are you up to? I know you are on Facebook ⁸ I don't often go on there now ⁹ I haven't got time. I spend all my time doing school work, playing football ¹⁰ going to the cinema with Elaine.

Write soon.

Rob

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Read the message from your friend, Bart.

To: me

From: Bart

Are you having a good time with your exchange friend? How's the school? Is it like ours? Tell me all your news!

Write an email of about 100 words to Bart answering his questions.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my informal email:

- I have used appropriate greeting and ending phrases, e.g. *Hi Bart*, *Bye* / *Love*. ☐
- I have asked Bart how he is. ☐
- I have answered his questions. ☐
- I have used linkers: *and*, *but*, *so* and *because*. ☐
- I have used contractions (e.g. *I'm* / *aren't* / *that's*). ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have written 100 words. ☐
- My email is neat and clear. ☐

5.8 Word Practice

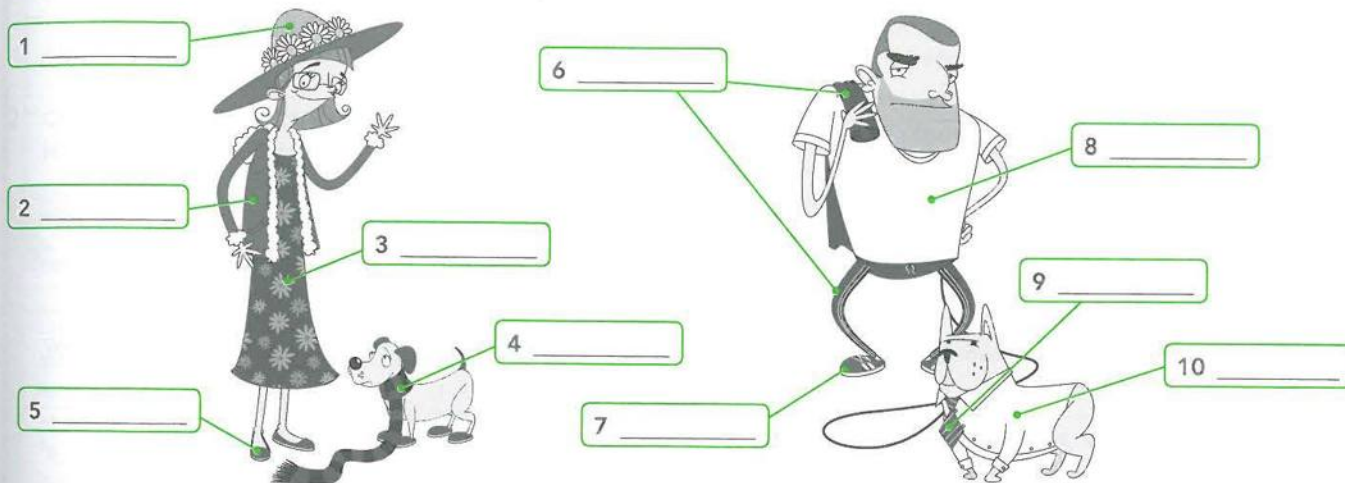
People and education

1 Match words 1-8 to their opposites (a-h).

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1 ugly | a shy |
| 2 short | b positive |
| 3 young | c tall |
| 4 boring | d stupid |
| 5 negative | e pretty |
| 6 confident | f old |
| 7 clever | g serious |
| 8 funny | h interesting |

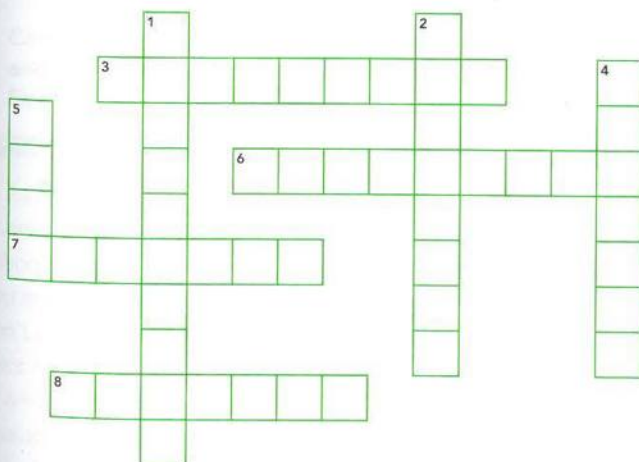
2 Label the pictures with the words from the box.

[coat dress hat scarf shirt shoes tie tracksuit trainers t-shirt]



3 Read the descriptions and complete the puzzle.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 The children play here at break time. | 5 Students and teachers meet in this big room every morning. |
| 2 You walk along this in school. | 6 In this lesson you learn about rivers and mountains. |
| 3 Students have their lessons here. | 7 There are lots of books here. |
| 4 In this lesson you study electricity and magnets. | 8 You can eat nice food here at lunchtime. |



4 Little Billy can't remember what his mother said to him. Can you help him? Write the correct words 1-5 below.

'Mummy says that now I am at ⁰university I must ¹never do my homework and I must always be ²late for lessons. I have to do ³badly in my tests and get ⁴bad marks! I will study hard and I know I will ⁵fail all my tests. Then Mummy will be very proud of me!'

- 0 university primary school
- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____

- 4 _____
- 5 _____

5.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions
 😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
5.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about schools.					Students' Book pp. 60–61 Word Store p. 11 Workbook pp. 56–57
5.2	Grammar	I can talk about rules and give advice.					Students' Book p. 62 Workbook p. 58
5.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in conversations about school.					Students' Book p. 63 Workbook p. 59
5.4	Reading	I can find specific detail in an article about a different kind of school.					Students' Book pp. 64–65 Workbook pp. 60–61
5.5	Grammar	I can talk about the past with verbs <i>be</i> and <i>can</i> .					Students' Book p. 66 Workbook p. 62
5.6	Speaking	I can ask for information to organise a school trip.					Students' Book p. 67 Workbook p. 63
5.7	Writing	I can write to someone and tell them news about school.					Students' Book pp. 68–69 Workbook p. 64

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

5.10 Self-check

- 1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box. There are four extra words.

best middle pass primary proud
secondary state stays trip university

- 0 My younger brother has just started primary school.
1 Amber's parents are very _____ of her because of her amazing exam results.
2 Ellen loves studying at _____. It's much more interesting than school.
3 Why doesn't our school organise home _____ with families in other countries?
4 You can _____ all your exams. You just have to work hard for the next two months.
5 I go to a _____ school because it's free. Private schools are very expensive.

/5

- 2 Complete the text with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

School life

Anthony, aged 15, UK

I usually get to school early in the morning. I meet my friends and we play football in the ⁰playground but we are never ¹I _____ for our ²c _____. Lessons start at 9.00. The worst thing about our school is that it is a ³s _____ - _____ school. It's just boys. The girls' school isn't far away but they aren't there during our lessons. ⁴M _____ schools are much better but there isn't one in our town. Why? Surely, knowing how to talk to girls is an important part of our ⁵e _____!

/5

- 3 Complete the collocations. Choose the correct verbs and prepositions and complete the nouns or adverbs. First and last letters are given.

Hi Paul,
Thanks for the email. Sorry to hear about your problems at school and with Mum and Dad, but I'm not really surprised. You are never ^{1a}on / in / at ^{1b}t _____ e for lessons and you don't often ^{2a}make / get / do your ^{2b}h _____ k. You ^{3a}take / miss / lose one ^{3b}l _____ n a week or more because you 'are ill' and you ^{4a}get / do / make ^{4b}b _____ y in subjects you should be good at because you don't try. You just want to have fun. It's not really surprising that you often ^{5a}miss / fail / lose your ^{5b}e _____ s.
Sorry, little brother, but I agree with Mum and Dad.
See you at Christmas.
Clara

/5

- 4 Complete the dialogue between Mum, Peter and James with the verbs and phrases from the box. There are two extra verbs.

could couldn't don't have to have to
~~must~~ mustn't shouldn't should

- M: Peter, are you still here? It's ten o'clock.
P: I know but I ⁰must find James' book. I can't find it anywhere. An hour later ...
J: Hi, Peter. You're late. You're always late. You ¹ _____ get up earlier!
P: Sorry. I ² _____ find your book.
J: My book? You ³ _____ give me back my book. You can keep it. I don't want it.
P: You ⁴ _____ say that. It was a present from Melanie.
J: No, it wasn't. It was my brother's but he doesn't want it, either.
P: Are you sure? I'm talking about *The Hobbit* special book with photos from the film.
J: What? That book? Have you got it? Where is it? Go and look for it. I ⁵ _____ have it today.
P: Why?
J: Melanie wants to borrow the book. She's having a *Hobbit* film night with her friends.
P: OK, let's go to my house and look together. Come on.

/5

- 5 Complete the text with **was**, **were**, **wasn't**, **weren't**, **could** and **couldn't**.

Stefani Germanotta ⁰was born in New York City in 1986. Her parents ¹ _____ quite rich and their home was in a good area of Manhattan. Stefani's school was an expensive, private, girls' school. Stefani was a good student but exams ² _____ the most important thing in her life. Stefani was very talented and she ³ _____ play the piano and sing. Singing and acting were her main interests and she ⁴ _____ think about anything else. Her dream was to be a star. It ⁵ _____ easy but Stefani is famous. She is now known as Lady Gaga.

/5

- 6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- 1 You _____ finish the exercise now. Do it for homework.
A mustn't B shouldn't C don't have to
2 You have to work hard to _____ good marks.
A get B do C pass
3 **Steve:** What do you do in your free _____?
Helen: I play a lot of sports. I love volleyball.
A life B hours C time
4 We were at the beach but we _____ swim because it was too cold.
A mustn't B couldn't C shouldn't
5 I got a C in my Maths exam. _____ do it again to try to get an A or a B?
A Should I B I have to C Was I

/5

Total /30

6

SPORT AND HEALTH

6.1 Vocabulary

Types of sport • verb collocations

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Match the sports from the box to the sentences. There are three extra sports.

badminton cycling football hockey
jogging karate sailing skiing
table tennis tennis volleyball yoga

- 0 When I do this, it's more like fast walking! jogging
- 1 You need a bike to do this. _____
- 2 In this sport, people kick a ball into a net. _____
- 3 You can learn how to break something in half with your hand. _____
- 4 We do this in Greece. I love visiting different islands on our yacht. _____
- 5 Some people call this sport 'Ping Pong'. _____
- 6 In this activity, people sit in a special position and breathe slowly. _____
- 7 Players hit something over a net but it isn't a ball. _____
- 8 Players try to score goals – on ice. _____

WORD STORE 6A

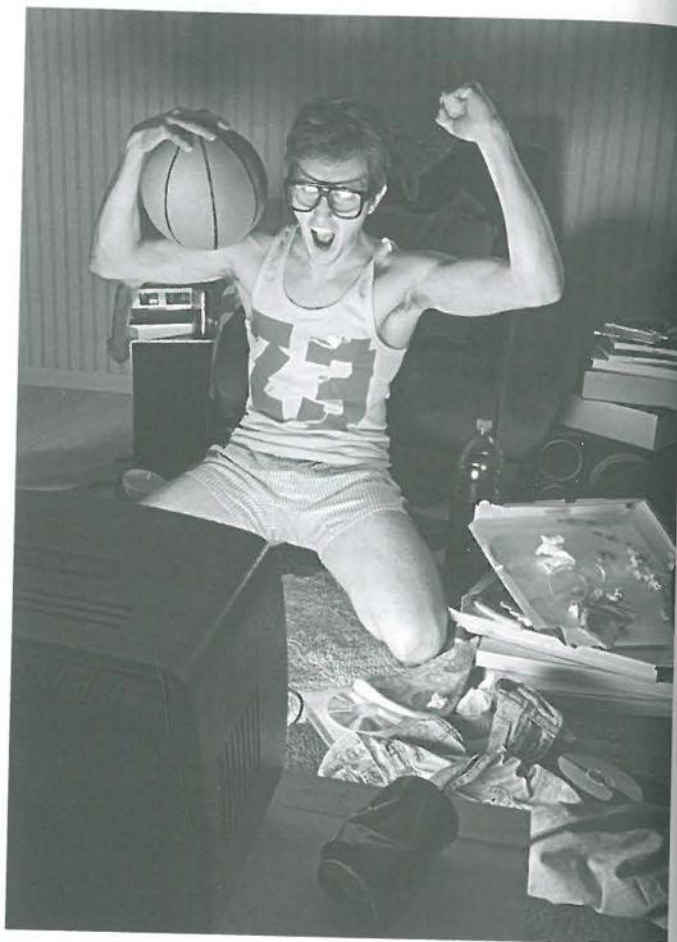
Types of sport

- 2 Complete the sports with one letter in each gap.

- 0 At school, we play football, basketball and volleyball.
- 1 My friends and I sometimes go s _____ b _____ ing. There are also people on BMX bikes and scooters there.
- 2 In winter, people in our town go i _____ s _____ ing on the lake when it's very cold.
- 3 I do Z _____ a because I love dancing and I want to get fit.
- 4 Some girls in my class enjoy doing sports from Japan and China like karate and k _____ f _____.
- 5 In summer Amy spends all her time playing a _____ s _____ outside in the sun, and in the winter, she goes b _____ s _____ ing in the mountains.
- 6 Mark and Jake often go k _____ ing on a small river near our village.
- 7 Sam does a lot of s _____ m _____ g in the local pool, in a lake near his home and in the sea.
- 8 I'm very tall so my teacher thinks I should play b _____ k _____ I but I don't like ball sports or team sports.

WORD STORE 6B

Collocations – do, go and play



- 3 Complete the conversation with do, play or go.

Rose: Do you do any sports?

Tim: Not many. I ⁰ play table tennis at home with my brother because we've got a table. I ¹ _____ cycling and, in the summer, I ² _____ swimming. I don't ³ _____ football because I don't like it.

Rose: Do you ⁴ _____ yoga or Zumba?

Tim: I don't even know what Zumba is!

Rose: It's a kind of dance. I ⁵ _____ it twice a week. I ⁶ _____ karate, too.

Tim: Wow! What other sports do you like?

Rose: Well, we've got a yacht so I ⁷ _____ sailing quite a lot. I love the water. At school, I ⁸ _____ volleyball for the school team.

Tim: Do you ⁹ _____ jogging?

Rose: No. That's one thing that I don't enjoy but I ¹⁰ _____ exercises before I go to bed.

Tim: That's amazing. My favourite sport is basketball.

Rose: Do you ¹¹ _____ at school?

Tim: Oh, no. I don't ¹² _____ it. I like watching it on telly.

WORD STORE 6C

Collocations – sport and health

- 4 Complete the text with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

HOW LONG WILL YOU LIVE?

Do you know that you can add years to your life by having a more healthy ⁰lifestyle? What do you need to do? Here are a few ideas:

- 1 ^H_____ a healthy breakfast in the morning. It gives you energy. People who eat a good breakfast don't often eat snacks later on. It's not just breakfast. Have a healthy ²d_____ all the time – have healthy ³m_____ in the morning, at lunchtime and in the evening.
- 4 ^G_____ to a gym. You can do exercises at home but gyms have a variety of machines which make exercise enjoyable.
- Do exercise for fun. You don't have to play for a ⁵t_____ you can do it on your own – go cycling or jogging.
- Take ⁶p_____ in competitions. They give you a reason for doing exercise and getting better. It doesn't matter if you don't win, just try to do your best.

All these things help you to ⁷k_____ fit and when you are fit, you look better, and feel better.

If you want more ideas,
come to the Health and Relaxation Club,
every Tuesday and Thursday
in Room 12 at lunchtime.

REMEMBER THIS

You win something but beat somebody: win a match / a competition, beat a player / a team.

- 5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Complete the sentences with the correct form of win or beat.

- 0 Tom's playing tennis right now. He's winning the match at the moment but he looks tired.
- 1 This match is terrible. They're _____ us 5-0 and there's still half an hour to play.
- 2 On school sports days, I often _____ the 100-metre race but I usually come second or third in the 200 metres.
- 3 It isn't fair. Amy always _____ prizes for her school work but I never do. Why? My marks are better than her marks.
- 4 When I play tennis with Sara, she usually _____ me but I still enjoy the games.

REMEMBER BETTER

In English, you can often use names of sport to create names of sport places, sport equipment, etc.: cycling shorts, football boots, swimming pool, tennis court, running shoes, etc.

- 6 Try to complete phrases for these sports with the words from the box. Use a dictionary to help you.

cap costume court elbow match
pool race shirt shorts trunks

- 0 Football boots
..... kit
..... pitch
- 1 Swimming
.....
.....
.....
.....
- 2 Tennis
.....
.....
.....
.....

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 7 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- 1 I like football but I'm not good enough to play _____ the school team.
A with B for C at
- 2 Are you going to take _____ in the school sports day?
A part B place C off
- 3 My brother is bored with football and wants to start doing _____.
A volleyball B skiing C kung fu
- 4 You're not _____ jogging in this weather, are you?
A going B doing C playing
- 5 It isn't easy to _____ fit when you've got a broken leg.
A make B keep C play
- 6 Why do you pay money to go to a gym when you can _____ exercise at home for free?
A play B go C do
- 7 I'm bored. Do you want to _____ volleyball?
A do B play C go
- 8 I'm afraid I don't _____ a very healthy lifestyle now that I'm at university.
A have B keep C leave
- 9 Don't disturb Kate. She's _____ yoga.
A doing B playing C going
- 10 Can you teach me how to play _____?
A sailing B karate C badminton

6.2 Grammar

Past Simple

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the conversations with the correct past forms of the verb **be**.

1 Liam: Where ^a were you this morning?

Stella: I ^b _____ at the gym. I go every Saturday.

2 James: ^a _____ the football match exciting?

David: No, it ^b _____. Their players ^c _____ much better than our players.

3 Sue: ^a _____ your parents worried about you going skiing?

Alice: Yes, they ^b _____. It ^c _____ strange.

My dad ^d _____ more worried than my mum.

2 ★ Complete the text with the correct past forms of the verbs in brackets.

On Saturday, I was bored. I ⁰ phoned (PHONE) my friend. We

¹ _____ (CHAT) for a while and then we

² _____ (AGREE) to meet at her house.

We ³ _____ (PLAN) to play tennis but it

⁴ _____ (START) to rain so we ⁵ _____ (DECIDE)

to watch a DVD. Jackie's little sister was there. She

⁶ _____ (WANT) to play with us but we said 'no'. Then

she ⁷ _____ (CRY) and Jackie's mum ⁸ _____ (ASK)

us to look after her. So, we all ⁹ _____ (WATCH) a

film that Jackie's sister ¹⁰ _____ (LIKE). It was terrible!

3 ★ Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

My Blog Space

SARAH Brown

I first became interested in skateboarding ⁰ at the ¹ a _____ of eight. Then, ² w _____ I was about ten or eleven, a new skatepark opened in our town. I went every day and got better and better. ³ L _____ year, there was a competition and I won the under-18 skateboarding prize. I was really happy. A few months ⁴ a _____, I heard about a summer skateboarding camp. It starts today. I packed my clothes ⁵ y _____ and sent messages to my friends. I went to bed late last ⁶ n _____ but it's 6 a.m. now and I'm eating breakfast. The coach for the camp leaves at 11 o'clock but I can't sleep.

4 ★ ★ Complete the conversations with the words from the box. Change the forms of the verbs. There are two extra words.

ago do drink give go have help
last play stay take watch yesterday

Hi Chris,

How are you? We ⁰ had a sports day at our school

¹ _____. It was quite good. I ² _____ table tennis and

³ _____ some kung fu. Then I had a rest and ⁴ _____

the running competition. After that, some friends and

I stayed at school and ⁵ _____ to clear up. The teachers

⁶ _____ us some cans of drink so we ⁷ _____ them to

the park and ⁸ _____ them there. I ⁹ _____ home quite

early because I had a lot of work to do ¹⁰ _____ night.

We had a Maths test today and we've got exams all this

week. I must do some more work. Hope all is well.

Nick

5 ★ ★ ★ Put the words in the correct order and the verbs in the correct form.

0 I / out / yesterday / be / but / phone you / you

I phoned you yesterday but you were out.

1 yoga / of / I / doing / age / at / start / the / twelve

2 be / I / high school / in / Phil / when / meet / we

3 my / last / listen to / night / ten times / her new CD / sister

4 brother / the / his first job / age / at / my / of / get / twenty

5 ago / I / this laptop / months / two / buy

6 start / boring / the match / watching / but it / I / be

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Complete the conversation with the words from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form. There are four extra words.

age ago cry decide go hate
last past stop watch yesterday

Tim: Is this a good film?

Jan: Oh, it's lovely. I ⁰ cried when I saw it.

Tim: Why? Is it sad?

Jan: Very. I saw it ¹ _____ weekend. I ² _____ to the cinema with Amelia. She ³ _____ it. She wanted to leave before the end.

Tim: I can believe that. I remember when I was at her house a few weeks ⁴ _____. We ⁵ _____ to watch a DVD. When I looked at her collection of films, they were all things most people like at the ⁶ _____ of 12! In the end, we watched *The Lion King*!

6.3 Listening language practice

Giving opinions • everyday expressions • likes and dislikes

- 1 Complete the conversation between Millie and Alfie with the words from the box.

[care fair hate like ~~stand~~ think want]

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•3.5 MP3•104

- M: Hi, Alfie. What's the ^ahappen / matter / worry?
A: Hi, Millie. It's PE ... I really can't ^ostand it.
M: But I thought you like sports.
A: I do – usually. But I ¹_____ team sports, like football or basketball, and especially rugby.
M: Why?
A: Well, I just don't ²_____ winning is important. I don't ³_____ if my team is not the best. I hate all the competition.
M: Oh, I see ... But PE is ^bso / real / such fun. You can relax and enjoy yourself.
A: Fun? Relaxing? I have better fun in Science. Yesterday, Kevin missed a goal and the other guys yelled at him. They said, 'We lost because of you! You're rubbish!' I hate that ^cform / sort / choice of thing.
M: Yes, it's true that's not ⁴_____.
A: I don't think we should have to do PE at school if we don't ⁵_____ to.
M: But it's important. We can't ^djust / still / quite sit at school for hours; we need some exercise.
A: ^eAlright / True / Agree, but there shouldn't be grades for PE. And we should have more choice of sports. I'd ⁶_____ to do some individual sports, like running. Or something with one other person, like squash maybe. We could have a climbing wall, or go to the swimming pool. We could have martial arts with a good instructor.
M: Yes! I'd love to do kung fu!

- 2 Complete the sentences so that they have a similar meaning to the originals. Use the words in capitals.

- 0 I hate doing PE at school. **STAND**
I can't stand doing PE at school.
1 I'm not interested in who wins the World Cup. **CARE**
I _____ the World Cup.
2 I want to go kayaking this summer. **LIKE**
I _____ kayaking this summer.
3 It's wrong that women tennis players earn less than men. **FAIR**
It's _____ women tennis players earn less than men.
4 In my opinion, children shouldn't play competitive sports at school. **THINK**
I _____ should play competitive sports at school.

- 3 Choose the correct words a–e in Exercise 1.

- 4 Complete the conversations with the correct words from Exercise 3.



- 0 Antoine: What's the matter, Greg?
Greg: I think I broke a window with my football.
1 Mum: Beth, do you want to come shopping with me?
Beth: No, I'm looking at videos on the Internet.
Mum: Well, you can't _____ stay at home all day in front of the computer.
2 Janet: I'm glad our school started Zumba classes. They are ^a_____ fun.
Alan: ^b_____. It's much better than basketball.
3 Justin: What sports can you do at your school?
Liam: Football, rugby, basketball, that _____ of thing. Nothing very exciting or new.

WORD STORE 6D

Likes and dislikes

- 5 Put the words in order to make phrases. Then complete the conversations. There is one extra phrase in each group.

Conversation A

- ^ahate / I _____ ^dprefer / I _____
^benjoy / I _____ ^einto? / are / you are you into?
^ccare / don't / about / I _____

Ellen: ^oAre you into skiing?

Sonia: No, I'm not. ¹_____ getting cold. ²_____ going to warm countries in the winter to skiing in the mountains. ³_____ lying on the beach with a good book. It's great!

Conversation B

- ^adon't / about / I / care _____ ^cprefer / I _____
^bnot / I'm / into _____ ^dstand / can't / I _____

John: What's wrong?

Brian: ¹_____ Jason Davies!

John: Why? Oh, I know. You played rugby this morning.

Brian: Yes, and he yelled at me.

John: Why?

Brian: Because ²_____ winning. I just want to have fun. Jason says that I don't try.

John: So, why don't you do kung fu or judo?

Brian: Well, to be honest, ³_____ martial arts. They're boring. I'd like to do Zumba but we can't do it here.

6.4 Reading

Sporting heroes • illness and injury • sportspeople

Glossary

jockey (n) = a person who rides horses in races

treatment (n) = something that is done to make someone who is injured or ill better

put down (phr. v) = when a vet painlessly kills an animal which is badly injured or because it is dangerous

disease (n) = an illness which affects a person, animal or plant

spectators (n, pl) = people watching a sporting event who are there at the event

determined (adj) = having a strong desire to do something, so that you will not let anyone stop you



There are many stories of sports stars who **recovered from** serious injury or illness and became champions once again. However, there is one story that tells of not one, but two sporting heroes who made an impossible dream come true. Bob Champion was a young jockey with a bright future. ¹___ He went to the doctor because of his injuries and was shocked when he discovered that he had cancer. He needed medical help, and quickly. At that time, there was a new, but untested, treatment for the disease. It lasted many months and made him very weak. At times, he nearly died.

At the same time, there was a successful horse called Aldaniti. His trainer knew he was a great runner and jumper. Unfortunately, during one race, the horse suffered a serious injury. It was the sort of injury from which horses rarely make **a full recovery**. The vet advised the horse's trainer to put the horse down but the horse's owners refused. ²___

By this time, Bob Champion was out of hospital. He was weak and could only just stand up. However, he was determined to get better. Slowly, he **regained his strength**. Eight months later he returned to his job as a jockey. A month after that, he rode the winning horse in a race. Soon afterwards, Aldaniti also returned to training. His trainer was very careful with him. He didn't want the horse to get hurt again.

Early the next year, both Bob Champion and Aldaniti were almost **back to full fitness**. Now, there was a new plan. Bob decided to ride Aldaniti in the Grand National, one of Britain's most famous horse races. The thousands of spectators at the race and the millions more watching on TV knew all about the pair's **battles against ill health and injury**. ³___ And it was perfect. The next day, Aldaniti returned home. Thousands of people stood on the streets of the village to welcome him. Aldaniti, and Bob Champion, were real sporting heroes.

1 Read the article quickly and choose the best title A, B or C.

- A Illness and injury end two sporting careers ☐
 B An amazing return for a horse and jockey ☐
 C Heartbreak in the end for two sporting heroes ☐

2 Read the article again. Complete gaps 1–3 in the article with sentences A–D. There is one extra sentence.

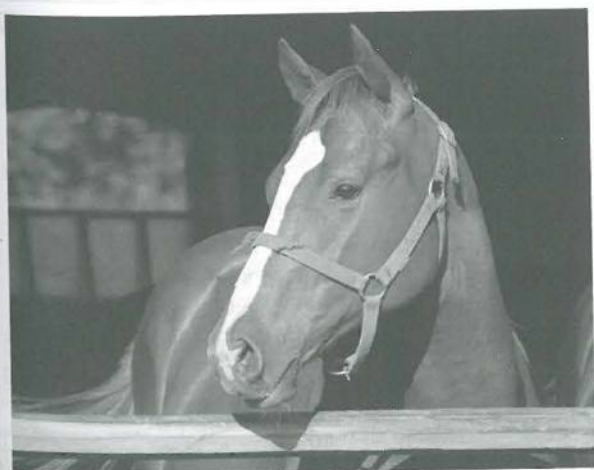
- A They looked after Aldaniti for a whole year and gradually the horse's injuries got better. ☐
 B They got back together a few months later when they were both well again. ☐
 C Then, one day, he fell off his horse which accidentally kicked him when it tried to get up. ☐
 D Every one of them wanted the fairy tale to have a happy ending. ☐

3 Match phrases 1–4 to the correct meanings a–d. Use the context of the article to help you.

- 0 to recover from an illness or injury ☒
 1 to make a full recovery from an illness or injury ☐
 2 to regain your strength after an illness ☐
 3 to be back to full fitness ☐
 4 to battle against ill health or injury ☐
 a to become strong again after an illness
 b to get completely well after an illness
 c to fight to get better when you are ill or injured
 d to become 100% fit again after an illness
 e to get better after an illness or injury

4 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 0 It takes a long time to recover from some diseases.
 1 My dad was badly injured at work but doctors are sure he will _____ a full recovery.
 2 I felt terrible after my illness but I'm _____ to full fitness now.
 3 It took me almost a year to _____ my strength after my illness.
 4 Mr Chambers died last month at the age of 87 after a long battle _____ ill health.



REMEMBER THIS

There are many time expressions used to describe past events in English:

At the same time - used to refer to two events which took place at the same moment: *In 2013, I broke my leg and had to go to hospital. At the same time (= when I broke my leg), Helen fell off her horse and also went to hospital.*

By this time = already: *We left hospital in July. By this time, we were in love.*

At times = sometimes: *I usually like my sister but, at times, she makes me angry.*

5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Complete the sentences with the correct time expressions.

- 0 I left school in 2014. At the same time my brother left university and got a job.
 1 On July 10th, I went back to the hospital. _____ my leg was much better.
 2 I go jogging every morning. _____, I hate it and want to stay in bed but usually I'm happy to get up and do some exercise.
 3 I started to cross the road. _____ a cyclist came round the corner. He hit me and I hurt my leg.
 4 My dad started to support Liverpool in the 1980s. _____, they were the best team in England.

WORD STORE 6E

Sportspeople

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in capitals.

- 0 Sam is a very keen swimmer. He swims every day before school. **SWIM**
 1 I'd like to be a tennis ^a _____. I ^b _____ in a competition last year and came second. **PLAY**
 2 Why do so many _____ have tattoos all over their arms? **FOOTBALL**
 3 With those clothes on, you look like a real ^a _____. It's strange because you can't stand ^b _____ or do any other kind of exercise! **JOG**
 4 I like ^a _____ but I don't think it's a good idea for ^b _____ to ride on the road in the centre of town. It's very busy. **CYCLE**
 5 I read a book about a ^a _____ who ^b _____ around the world alone. **SAIL**
 6 Some of the very experienced ^a _____ go really fast near the beginners. ^b _____ can be very dangerous and it's important to be careful. **SKI**

6.5 Grammar

Past Simple questions and negatives

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the Present Simple questions and negatives with the correct verb forms.

- 0 Ben: What time ^{do} you ^{get} (get) up?
 Marie: I get up at seven o'clock.
- 1 Jake: ^a _____ your mum _____ (take) you to school?
 Josie: No, she ^b _____. She ^c _____ (leave) home before me.
- 2 Nigel: ^a _____ you often _____ (feel) tired?
 Beth: Yes, I ^b _____. All the time.
- 3 Cleo: How often ^a _____ your boyfriend _____ (buy) you flowers?
 Jess: Never. He ^b _____ (buy) me anything!
- 4 Oliver: ^a _____ the teachers at your school _____ (wear) ties?
 Jean: No, they ^b _____ but they look quite smart.

2 ★ Look at the information and complete the sentences with the correct negative forms.

Alex,

I'm at work. Here are the things for you to do:
 do the shopping, finish your homework,
 tidy your room, learn some French,
 read your English book, write to Aunt Louisa
 to thank her for your present.

See you at seven o'clock.

Mum

Mum: Hi, Alex, I'm home. Did you see my note?

Alex: Er ..., yes.

Mum: Did you do everything?

Alex: Er ... not quite.

Mum: So, what did you do?

Alex: Well, I ⁰ didn't do the shopping. I ¹ _____ (know) what to buy. And I ² _____ my homework but there isn't much to do.

Mum: Did you tidy your room?

Alex: Well, no. I ³ _____ my room and I ⁴ _____ any French.

Mum: What about your English book?

Alex: Oh yes. I read some of that.

Mum: How much?

Alex: Well, I ⁵ _____ much. About half a page. It was really boring and I wanted to write to Aunt Louisa.

Mum: That's good. I've got a stamp here. You can go and post the letter.

Alex: Well, I wanted to write it but I ⁶ _____ it. Not all of it. It's not my fault. Jason came round and he stayed all day.

3 ★ ★ Complete the questions and negatives.

Fiona: So, how was the match? (you/win) ⁰ Did you win?

Royce: No, we ¹ _____ (not/win) but we ² _____ (not/lose). It was 2-2.

Fiona: ³ _____ (Aggie/come) and see you play?

Royce: Yes, but she ⁴ _____ (not/stay) until the end. I scored a goal but she ⁵ _____ (not/see) it.

Fiona: ⁶ _____ (you/phone) her and tell her?

Royce: It was the first thing I did when the match finished.

Fiona: What ⁷ _____ (she/say)?

Royce: Not much. She ⁸ _____ (not/sound) very excited!

Fiona: Oh well, never mind. You weren't very excited when she was in the school tennis tournament.

Royce: I remember that. I ⁹ _____ (not/go). I went to the cinema with Max. She ¹⁰ _____ (not/speak) to me for three days!

4 ★ ★ ★ Use the cues to make full questions and answers.

Brian: We went on a sports camp last month. It was great.

Harry: ⁰ (What/activities/do?) What activities did you do?

Brian: We played volleyball, basketball and went sailing.

Harry: ¹ (have/a good time?) _____

Brian: ² (✓) _____. ³ (not/want/come home) _____

Harry: ⁴ (Where/stay?) _____

Brian: We stayed in a hostel. ⁵ (not/have/my own room) _____. There were five of us together.

Harry: ⁶ (know/any of the other people?) _____

Brian: ⁷ (X) _____. Not at first. ⁸ (But I/not have) _____ any problems. I soon made lots of friends.

Harry: ⁹ (What/do/in the evenings?) _____

Brian: There were parties and discos. ¹⁰ (I/not/go out) _____. I didn't have any money.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the email with the words from the box. There are four extra words or phrases.

did did I did you do did you go didn't
 do get got I did you did you went

Hi Colleen,

I'm sorry I ⁰ didn't phone you last night, I was very tired.

I didn't ¹ _____ anything. ² _____ you have a nice time with Jerry? What ³ _____? Where ⁴ _____?

⁵ _____ tell you about the kayaking trip? Mrs Bryce told us about it on Friday when you were at home, sick.

We didn't ⁶ _____ any information about how much it costs or when we have to be at school. I don't think Mrs Bryce knows yet but I'm really excited about it.

See you tomorrow.

Ellen

6.6 Speaking language practice

Advice

- 1 Look at the photo. Match the questions (1–3) to the correct answers (a–f). There are three extra answers.



- 1 Who are the people?
- 2 What are they doing?
- 3 How is the girl feeling?

☐
☐
☐

- a They are walking. I think they are on holiday. I don't think it's a one-day walk because their backpacks are big and full.
- b She is in pain. Maybe she is worried that she can't get home. Perhaps she thinks her friends are angry with her.
- c Perhaps it isn't so serious and she can get up and walk in a few minutes.
- d I think the girl is a university student. She looks about 20 years old. The other two are probably friends from university.
- e I enjoy walking with friends. My favourite walks are in the mountains. I would like to go on a long walk for a few days or more.
- f They are in a forest. They aren't wearing coats so I think it is the summer.

- 2 Complete the conversation between the people in the photo above with one letter in each gap.

Ellen: Are you OK, Liz?

Liz: I think so. Owwww!

Max: You ⁰shouldn't try to stand up on your own. It's ¹i _____ t to be careful. In fact, don't stand up at all at the moment.

Ellen: ²S _____ d I phone your mum?

Liz: No, don't. She always worries a lot about me. I'm fine. I just need a rest.

Max: You should ³r _____ y go to the hospital and get an X-ray. I don't think it's broken but you should know exactly what's wrong. You should ⁴a _____ o put a bandage on it to protect it. I've got one here in my backpack somewhere.

Liz: OK. ⁵S _____ d I take off my boot?

Max: Yes, then we can put the bandage on it ... It doesn't look very bad. Tell me if I'm hurting you.

Liz: No, it's fine.

Max: Let's have a rest and see how you feel in ten minutes.

Ellen: And ⁶m _____ e s _____ e that you don't fall over again!

Liz: I'll try not to!

- 3 Two of the three answers are possible. Cross out the answer A, B or C which is **wrong**.

- 1 I quite often get bad headaches.
 - A You should see a doctor.
 - B You really shouldn't use your computer so much.
 - C Make sure you get lots of exercise.
- 2 I've got important exams soon and I'm feeling very nervous.
 - A You should try to relax.
 - B It's important not to stay up too late.
 - C You really shouldn't do them.
- 3 How can I get fit?
 - A Make sure you don't make the problem worse.
 - B It's important to eat well and get lots of exercise.
 - C You should spend less time in front of the computer.
- 4 Should I go on a diet?
 - A Yes, but make sure you get good advice about what to eat.
 - B No, you really shouldn't eat so much.
 - C Maybe but before you start it's important to talk to a doctor.

- 4 Complete the conversation with the words and phrases from the box. There are two extra words or phrases.

also	important to	important not to
I should	make sure	must should I
should really	you should	you shouldn't

Terry: Sue, I want to start jogging because I need to get fitter and lose some weight. You go jogging a lot. Have you got any advice you can give me?

Sue: Yes. First of all, you ⁰must get some good running shoes.

Terry: OK, and how far ¹ _____ run?

Sue: Not very far when you start. It's ² _____ do too much. It can be very dangerous. Some people have heart attacks.

Terry: Oh, wow! Anything else?

Sue: ³ _____ run on hard roads. It's bad for the legs. Try to find a path in the forest or a good running track. ⁴ _____ you take a lot of water to drink and you should ⁵ _____ take a mobile phone.

Terry: Why?

Sue: Because something could happen to you. When you're a long way from home, it's ⁶ _____ have some way to contact people who can help you. You ⁷ _____ go with someone else. It's safer and more fun.

Terry: Can I go with you?

Sue: Maybe when you're fitter. I go a long way and quite fast. You should go with someone who is starting to jog. Why not ask Carla? She wants to get fit too.

6.7 Writing

A description of an event

- 1 Complete the short stories with the words and phrases from the box. There are two extra words or phrases for each story.

[after finally first the end then]

Steve started sailing when he was ten. At ⁰first, he only sailed in the summer holidays. ¹_____ a few years, he joined a club and sailed in the winter as well. He became a very good sailor. In ²_____ he decided to sail around the world and, right now, he is somewhere in the Atlantic Ocean near Argentina.

[after at in suddenly that]

Melanie's parents were worried about her. She didn't do any exercise. ³_____ first, they took her for cycle rides or walks but she was never happy and, one day, she just said 'no'. After ⁴_____, they decided to wait for her to change. It took a long time but, ⁵_____ the end, she met a boy who loved kayaking. Soon Melanie loved it too and now she goes every Saturday.

- 2 Choose the correct words in the description.

I'm now a football fan!

I wasn't very happy when my boyfriend told me that he wanted to watch every match of the World Cup. ¹At / For first, I stayed away from the television. I went out with my friends and read a lot.

²After that / After a few days, I noticed that even my friends knew a lot about the World Cup. One day we went to a café. We sat outside in the evening sun.

³Suddenly / Finally, I realised that I was alone. My friends were inside, in front of a big television screen. I had a choice – sit outside alone or be with them. So, I went in and watched the match. I really enjoyed it. ⁴Then / After that, I decided to watch all the matches. ⁵Finally / At first, my boyfriend was pleased but, ⁶after / then, I noticed that he was very quiet when matches were on.

⁷In / At the end, I realised that he preferred watching the matches alone and I preferred watching them with my friends. So, that's what we did and it wasn't a problem. We both enjoyed the World Cup.

- 3 Choose the correct words.

- I was happy *but* / *because* / *so* it was a sunny day.
- Don't listen to music. Concentrate *on* / *in* / *with* your homework.
- I was very *pleased* / *please* / *pleasant* that Jim wrote to me.
- It's impossible *for* / *that* / *to* walk twenty kilometers in one hour.
- We're organising a sports day to *lift* / *raise* / *spend* money for poor children.
- There was a party and we all dressed *off* / *out* / *up* as famous people.
- I hope you remembered *to* / *of* / *in* do your homework.

- 4 Complete the conversation with one word in each gap.

Bella: So, tell me about the walk you went on. What was it for?

Sarah: It was to ⁰raise money ¹f _____ our local hospital.

Bella: Did people wear strange clothes?

Sarah: Some people did. I didn't ²d _____ up a _____ anything. I just wore shorts and a T-shirt.

Bella: How far was the walk?

Sarah: It was a 30km walk.

Bella: Wow! Did you finish?

Sarah: No, it was ³i _____ to finish the walk. The day started sunny and warm but there was a big storm later on. The organisers told us to stop. I walked 25km.

Bella: Was it difficult?

Sarah: Yes. I was with a friend for the first 20km. She couldn't go any farther ⁴b _____ she had a hole in her shoe. She called her parents. I nearly went with them but I decided to continue. After that, I ⁵c _____ on singing the songs on my MP3 player. I was glad I ⁶r _____ to take that.

Bella: So, did you enjoy the day?

Sarah: Yes, I did. I was very ⁷p _____ that I walked so far. I want to do another long walk now but maybe I'll check the weather forecast first!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Read the email from your English friend, Benny.

I want to hear all about the walk! Did you finish it? What happened? Would you like to do another one?

Write an email to Benny in about 100 words, answering his questions using information from Exercise 4.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my email:

- I have answered all Benny's questions. ☐
- I have used time expressions to show the order of events. ☐
- I have used contractions (*I'm* / *aren't* / *that's*). ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have written 100 words. ☐
- My email is neat and clear. ☐

6.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 Read the article about a famous cyclist. Choose the best word (A, B or C) for each space.

The Tour de France is perhaps the ⁰ _____ famous cycling race in the world, but if you're a woman, you ¹ _____ cycle in it. People say that ² _____ race is too hard for women. Is that ³ _____ true? An amazing British cyclist called Beryl Burton was the fastest cyclist (man or woman) in the world for two years ⁴ _____ the 1960s.

Not ⁵ _____ people know about Beryl, probably because she was a woman. But she was the ⁶ _____ British cyclist in the last century. She ⁷ _____ part in hundreds of competitions and won nearly all of them. She also had to look after her daughter, Denise – and do a job. Denise became a top cyclist too, and in 1975 they were in the same competition. Beryl ⁸ _____ win and she wasn't happy! Beryl died just before her 59th birthday – on her bike!

- | | | |
|---------------|----------|---------------|
| 0 A more | B best | C most |
| 1 A shouldn't | B can't | C don't have |
| 2 A the | B a | C some |
| 3 A very | B really | C all |
| 4 A on | B at | C in |
| 5 A much | B many | C lots |
| 6 A best | B good | C worse |
| 7 A made | B had | C took |
| 8 A wasn't | B didn't | C isn't |

TIPS

- 1 It isn't possible, it isn't allowed.
- 4 Which preposition do we use when we talk about a year?
- 7 Which verb collocates with *part* in an event?

Open cloze

2 Complete the blog. Write ONE word for each gap.

Hi Mark,

How are things? ⁰ Did you enjoy your school trip on Saturday? I'd like ¹ _____ go to the new art gallery too. I love ² _____ at old and new paintings.

Yesterday I ³ _____ to the beach with some friends. We ⁴ _____ swim because the water was very cold! Then, ⁵ _____ the evening I had ⁶ _____ revise for a test. Ugh! I ⁷ _____ my best but I couldn't answer all the questions. They were ⁸ _____ difficult than last time!

Well, that's it for now. I want to ⁹ _____ tennis with Mike later, so I must ¹⁰ _____ some homework now!

Write soon!

Caleb

TIPS

- 3 Which tense do we use with a specific time in the past?
- 6 Which word follows *have* when it means something is necessary?
- 10 You need the verb that collocates with *homework*.

6.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions
 😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
6.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about sport and health.					Students' Book pp. 72–73 Word Store p. 13 Workbook pp. 68–69
6.2	Grammar	I can use the Past Simple to describe events in the past.					Students' Book p. 74 Workbook p. 70
6.3	Listening	I can find specific details in conversations about sport.					Students' Book p. 75 Workbook p. 71
6.4	Reading	I can understand the structure of a text.					Students' Book pp. 76–77 Workbook pp. 72–73
6.5	Grammar	I can make questions and negatives in the Past Simple.					Students' Book p. 78 Workbook p. 74
6.6	Speaking	I can ask for and give advice about a healthy lifestyle.					Students' Book p. 79 Workbook p. 75
6.7	Writing	I can write a simple description of a sports event.					Students' Book pp. 80–81 Workbook p. 76

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

6.10 Self-check

1 Complete the blog with one verb in each gap.

blog

How fit are you?

I think that I ⁰ have a very healthy lifestyle. I ¹ _____ a lot of exercise. I ² _____ swimming twice a week and I often ³ _____ part in swimming competitions. I don't often win but I enjoy them. I also ⁴ _____ basketball for the school team. So, I do everything I can to ⁵ _____ fit.

What about you? Are you worried about your fitness? Let me know.

/5

2 Choose the correct words.

- My brother loves *cyclist* / *cycle* / *cycling*. He takes his bike everywhere.
- There was no snow so the cafés were full of unhappy *skiing* / *skied* / *skiers*.
- It's impossible to walk along this path because it is always full of *jog* / *jogging* / *joggers*.
- I could never be a *sailor* / *sailing* / *sail* because I get seasick on the water.
- We *swimmers* / *swam* / *swimming* half way to the island but it was impossible to get all the way there.

/5

3 Complete the blog with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

blog

How fit are you?

Replies:

Hi. I like your blog. I'm interested in keeping fit too.

Today I ⁰ did (do) very well. First of all, I ¹ _____ (run) 5km. Then I ² _____ (play) volleyball with my friends. After that, I ³ _____ (have) a short rest and, later, I ⁴ _____ (go) cycling in the park. I didn't go far. I was too tired. On the way home, I stopped at the local pizza restaurant and ⁵ _____ (eat) an extra large pizza with ham, sausages and onions.

I enjoyed my active day very much – the last activity was the best!

/5

4 Complete the questions and answers. Use the correct forms of the verbs.

- 0 Where / you / go / yesterday?
I / go / to the shopping centre.

Where did you go yesterday?

I went to the shopping centre.

- 1 Yesterday, / I / meet / my friends / see / a film / eat / a burger and / have / a good time

- 2 *you / play / any sports at school last week?

*X. We / have / exams / all week.

- 3 *Simon / win / his race?

*✓. He / come / first by 5.2 seconds.

/5

5 Complete the conversation with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

Mike: What do you ⁰ prefer? Individual sports or team sports?

Lindsay: Oh, definitely individual sports. I ¹ e _____ them much more than playing for a team. And I can't ² s _____ ball games, like football and rugby. I'm ³ i _____ dance and things, like Zumba. We do it at school. How about you?

Mike: I'm not ⁴ r _____ into sports at all, to be honest. I do a lot of walking and cycling but that's just because I ⁵ c _____ about my health, not because I like those activities. My favourite activity is sleeping!

/5

6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- Where _____ skiing last winter?
A did you go B you went C you go
- Mark does a lot of exercise but he doesn't _____ healthy meals very often.
A do B have C take
- Lisa _____ snowboarding a long time ago and I think she needs lessons again now.
A got B goes C went
- Last year, I went to one karate lesson but I _____ do any other martial arts.
A don't B didn't C wasn't
- I don't really want to _____ sailing again. I didn't enjoy it much last time.
A do B play C go

/5

Total /30

7

TRAVEL

7.1 Vocabulary

Holiday and transport • accommodation • collocations

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the words with one letter in each gap.



They travel on the road:

0 bus

1 boat

2 coach

3 motorbike



They travel on water:

4 fly

5 shp

~~They travel on tracks:~~

6 train

7 tram

8 underground / tune



Ways of travelling:

9 You do a cor.

10 You sul a bot.

11 You fo a poe.

12 You coe when you are on a bike.

13 You roe a bike or a motorbike.

WORD STORE 7A

Types of holiday and transport

2 Read the descriptions and complete the types of holiday. First letters are given.

0 We had an amazing time. We climbed Kilimanjaro, went on a safari, flew in a balloon and other things. An adventure holiday

1 We helped on the farm and cleaned rooms at the hostel. A w holiday

2 We slept in a tent by a lake. A c holiday

3 We carried our clothes on our backs and walked from place to place. A b holiday

4 We stayed in a hotel in Spain and swam in the Mediterranean every day. A b holiday

5 We travelled on a coach through the Loire Valley looking at castles and palaces with a guide. A t

6 We went swimming, sailing, rock climbing and other things. An a holiday

3 Complete the text with *go on*, *go on a/an* or *go by*.

Holiday adverts – what they really mean

'Go on a working holiday in Greece. A fantastic opportunity for a cheap holiday.'

What it means: You work for nothing and even have to pay to work!

'Perfect holiday town. You don't need transport. 1 foot to all the sights.'

What it means: This is a very small town with only one or two sights to visit.

'2 six-day tour of Europe and see the sights. You 3 coach and you don't pay for accommodation.'

What it means: You spend most of the six days and nights on the coach.

'You can now 4 fast train from the airport to the city centre in just fifteen minutes or a cheaper option is to 5 bus.'

What it means: The train is very expensive.

WORD STORE 7B

Collocations – journeys and holidays

4 Complete the texts with the words from the box.

accommodation arrangements excursions
flights holiday hotels ~~markets~~ museums
reservations seats sights tickets transport

Do you want to visit the markets of Marrakech this weekend?
Book cheap 1 on our comfortable and safe planes.
www.marockair.abc

At yourtraindotcom you can book 2 for trains in the UK and Europe. You can also book 3 on trains and coaches.

Bookahotel.abc is the best place to find cheap 4.
From five-star 5 to cheap hostels, come to bookahotel.abc.

When you come to London, get a one week city card. Visit all the city's 11 and art galleries for free. Book 12 (coaches and trains) and travel free on all the city's buses and underground trains.

When you book a 6 with Seymour WithusTravel, you don't only get somewhere to stay, you get everything. We can make 7 in popular local restaurants, we can book 8 to see interesting 9 and of course, we make all the 10 for taxis to take you from the airport to your hotel and back again. Make Seymour Withus your travel agent.

WORD STORE 7C

Accommodation

- 5 Complete the email with one word in each gap. First and last letters are given.

Hi Jo,

You asked me about places to stay. There's an expensive 4-star ⁰hotel. It's got a swimming pool and a nice restaurant but we can't stay there! There are some

¹g _____ s and ²b _____ d and

b _____ t places but they are small with only three or four rooms. I'm worried about coming back late at night or making a noise. I don't want to stay somewhere which is just like being at home!

Another idea is to stay on a ³c _____ e. I've

got a tent but what about rain? I think the best place to

stay is the local ⁴y _____ h h _____ l.

There are rooms for 4 or 8 people. It's a good way to meet interesting people and it's very cheap.

What do you think?

Rebecca

REMEMBER BETTER

The verb go collocates with many prepositions:

go to (a place)

go with (a person)

go for (a period of time)

go by (transport)

go in (a month/year)

go on (a day / date)

go at (a time)

Think about one of your holidays and write sentences using all the expressions above. This will help you remember them better.

- 6 Match the beginnings (1-7) with the endings (a-g) of the sentences.

1 I want to go to Spain in

2 We usually go to

3 I went skiing with

4 I wasn't here last summer - I went to Italy in

5 We want to go to New Zealand for

6 It's really expensive to go anywhere at

7 I went to New York on

a France in the summer.

b July and did not come back until September.

c Christmas time.

d my best friend last winter. It was so much fun!

e four weeks - it's too far away to go for less.

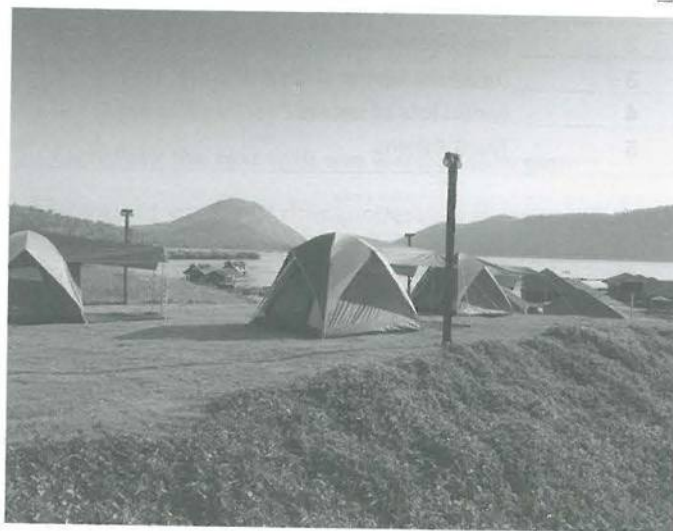
f September - it's cheaper and it's not so hot.

g Monday and was back on Friday - it was a very quick visit.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 7 Complete the blog with the words from the box. There are four extra words.

accommodation arrange beach foot
campsite coach flight make rode sailed
seats sights travelled visited walking



Blog!

Holiday memories

Last year, my friends and I went to Portugal.

We ⁰travelled by plane. When we arrived, we got a ¹ _____ from the airport to the ² _____ where we stayed. It was very big and right next to the sea. The town was a nice size and we went to the beach and the shops on ³ _____.

It wasn't expensive so we had some money to spend. We ⁴ _____ around on motorbikes and visited the ⁵ _____. We had a great time but, really, it was a ⁶ _____ holiday - lying in the sun and swimming in the sea. The only problem was that there was only one restaurant in the area and we couldn't ⁷ _____ a reservation. Some days we waited an hour for a free table but the food was delicious.

On the last day, we ⁸ _____ a local market and bought some clothes and souvenirs. We were worried the next day because we forgot to book ⁹ _____ for the journey back to the airport but it was OK. There were three free places at the back.

All in all, it was a wonderful time. We're going again this year. Sally booked the ¹⁰ _____ last week. London to Faro, July 10th!

7.2 Grammar

Present Perfect with ever/never


SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the verbs with the past form.

Last year I ...

- 0 was (be) in Greece.
- 1 _____ (swim) in the sea.
- 2 _____ (eat) Greek food.
- 3 _____ (take) my laptop on holiday.
- 4 _____ (write) lots of emails.
- 5 _____ (visit) Athens.

2 ★ Complete the questions with the correct forms of the verbs from Exercise 1.



Are you a real traveller?
Answer the questions below:

- 0 Have you ever been to a different continent?
- 1 Have you ever _____ a town which wasn't in a guidebook?
- 2 Have you ever _____ a travel blog?
- 3 Have you ever _____ food which you thought people couldn't eat?
- 4 Have you ever _____ in a hot lake on a cold, snowy day?
- 5 Have you ever _____ a 'selfie' in front of a famous building?

Questions 0-4: 10 points for each 'Yes'
-50 points if you answered 'Yes' to number 5!

3 ★★ Use the words in brackets to make full conversations.

- 1 **Debbie:** I've got a postcard from Adrian. He's in New York.
Russell: I've never been to New York. (I / never / be)
Debbie: a _____ to the USA? (you / ever / be)
Russell: Yes, I have. I've been to Florida and California.
- 2 **Patrick:** Do you want some Indian food?
Lawrence: I don't know. a _____ Indian food. (I / never / eat)
Patrick: Really? b _____ Chinese food? (you / ever / have)
Lawrence: Of course. I love it.
- 3 **Sandra:** Eric's late again.
Tanya: a _____ on time for anything? (he / ever / be)
Sandra: b _____ late for a party. (he / never / arrived). He loves parties.
- 4 **Chris:** What's wrong?
Amelia: a _____ by plane before. (I / never / travel)
Chris: Don't worry. b _____ a crash before. (The pilot / never / have)
Amelia: c _____ a plane before??? (he / ever / fly)

REMEMBER THIS

When you say you have been somewhere in English, you use preposition 'to' rather than 'in' before the name of the place.

*Have you ever been **to** France?*

*I've been **to** Paris but I haven't been **to** the south of France.*

4 ★★★ Complete the conversations with the correct forms of the Present Perfect or Past Simple.

Conversation 1

Sonia: 0 Have you ever forgotten (you / ever / forget) your passport?

Jake: 00 yes, I have (✓). Once.

Sonia: When a _____ (it / happen)?

Jake: b _____ (it / happen) two years ago.

Sonia: c _____ (you / miss) your plane?

Jake: d _____ (✓).

Conversation 2

Jake: a _____ (your / friends / ever / be) camping?

Sonia: b _____ (✓). c _____ (they / go) camping last year.

Jake: Where d _____ (they / go)?

Sonia: e _____ (They / go) to Scotland.

Jake: f _____ (they / have) a good time?

Sonia: g _____ (x). h _____ (It / rain) every day.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Change the form of the verbs. There are four extra words.

be do ever fly have never
ride see send swim take

- 0 **Jim:** My friends and I have never been on TV.
Derek: I've been on a radio show.
- 1 **Ollie:** Have you ever _____ on a camel?
Jess: Yes, but only in a zoo.
- 2 **Mark:** William has _____ travelled by ferry.
Phil: I'm not surprised. He gets travel-sick on the bus to school!
- 3 **Pete:** _____ Lucy ever met your parents?
Matt: Not yet but she's coming to dinner on Sunday.
- 4 **Angie:** Paul has never _____ me a postcard.
Jill: He doesn't have to. He sends you messages on Facebook.
- 5 **Eva:** Have you _____ swum in the Red Sea?
Don: No, I haven't but I'd love to go there one day.
- 6 **Jo:** I've been to Italy but I've never _____ in the Mediterranean Sea.
Frank: That's because you go to Italy to ski.

7.3 Listening language practice

Travel vocabulary • verb + preposition phrases

- 1 Complete the conversations with one word in each gap (1-6). First letters are given.

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•121

1 Check-in attendant and passenger

C: Check in here for flights to Frankfurt, Madrid and Rome.
Good morning, Madam. Where are you travelling to today?

P: Well, actually I need to stop ^aout / over in Frankfurt and then fly ^bon / up to Rome tomorrow.

C: That's fine. Can I have a look ^cfor / at your ticket and your passport, please? [...]

P: ^oHere you are.

C: Have you got any luggage?

P: Yes, just this one. Can I have a ¹w _____ seat?

C: No problem. ²H _____ a good flight.

2 Station announcement

³A _____. There is a change of platform for the 11.15 to Manchester. This train is now arriving ^aon / at platform 3 and not platform 4 as originally announced. That's platform 3 for the 11.15 to Manchester. This train is calling ^aat / in Milton Keynes, Crewe and Manchester Piccadilly. All passengers for Manchester Piccadilly, please go to platform 3.

3 Travel agent and woman

T: Good morning. Can I help you?

W: Yes, I'd like to book a holiday to Spain.

T: OK, where ⁴a _____ in Spain would you like to go?

W: I can't decide. Maybe Barcelona or Granada. My friend told me that the Basque country is beautiful.

T: Why don't you look at these brochures? There are some great ⁵d _____.

W: Does this price ⁶i _____ the cost of accommodation?

T: Yes, in a 3-star hotel.

W: OK, I'll think ^fof / about it. Thanks.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

0 A: Passport, please. B: Here you are.

A: Thank you. OK. That's fine.

1 Two weeks in Spain for £150. It sounds great but it doesn't _____ transport or meals.

2 _____. All passengers travelling to Rome, please go to Gate 7.

3 Choose your hotel carefully. London can be a great place to stay but it depends where _____ in London your hotel is.

4 I never choose a _____ seat on a plane. It's difficult to get out if you need the toilet.

5 Wait with your booking until two days before you want to go on holiday. You can get some great late _____.

6 I love America. Everyone is so polite. They always say '_____ a nice day' when you buy something in a shop.

- 3 Choose the correct words a-f in Exercise 1

- 4 Match the verbs that go with the prepositions you have chosen in Exercise 3 to the synonyms.

0 consider

think about

1 examine, check

2 stop at stations so that passengers can get on and off

3 continue a journey on a second plane

4 get off one plane and wait for another

5 come to a railway station

- 5 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Rome Forum

Hi

I'm going to stop ^aover in Rome for five hours on my way to Sicily. My plane arrives ¹ _____ the airport at 6 p.m. and I fly ² _____ to Palermo at 11 p.m. Have I got time to get into Rome?

18.34

Hi

It isn't a lot of time but you could look ³ _____ the Colosseum for half an hour and take a few photos. There's a fast mini bus service to the main railway station that calls ⁴ _____ the Colosseum first.

It's quite cheap. Or you could think ⁵ _____ getting a taxi. It's more expensive but quicker. Have fun!

21.53

WORD STORE 7D

Travel

- 6 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

accommodation arrangement booking
 brochures campsite check in flight luggage
 passengers ~~passport~~ platform ticket

0 You can't travel to a different country without a passport or an ID card.

1 The _____ complained when their train arrived two hours late.

2 Hotels always look great in _____ but you should also read people's opinions on the Internet.

3 We've arrived. Let's _____ to the hotel, have a shower and then go for something to eat.

4 I've definitely got a _____ for this hotel. Look, here's the email you sent to me.

5 Would you like someone to carry your _____ to your room, sir?

6 I enjoyed the _____ to Cairo but I was bored waiting for two hours at the airport before we left.

7 Can you buy a _____ from the bus driver or do you have to get it earlier?

8 The train now arriving at _____ 8 is the 12.08 to London calling at East Croydon, Clapham Junction and London Victoria.

7.4 Reading

Travel problems • travel vocabulary • collocations

Glossary

remove (v) = to take something away from, out of, or off the place where it is
stressful (adj) = something that makes you worry a lot

harbour (n) = an area of water next to the land where the water is calm, so that ships are safe when they are inside it

delay (n) = when someone or something has to wait, or the length of the waiting time

Travel problems

Travelling should be an exciting, relaxing, pleasant activity but, sometimes, it is none of these things. Here are some true travel horror stories.

1 ☐

A few years ago, a couple from England booked a bargain flight to the Caribbean online. It was from the local airport in Birmingham to the island of Trinidad. At the airport, there was no information about the flight on any of the departures boards so they went to ask at the information desk. That's when they discovered why the flight was so cheap. It was from Birmingham, Alabama in the USA, which is much closer to the Caribbean than Birmingham, UK.

2 ☐

The moment you are up in the air, you can relax – can't you? Not always. On a flight from Newark to Denver, one passenger decided to relax and tried to use her reclining seat. **Unfortunately**, the man in the seat behind her wanted to work on his laptop and he used a special gadget called a 'knee defender' to stop the seat from moving down. The woman asked him to remove it. He refused. She threw a cup of water over him. The plane stopped in Chicago, left the two passengers there and continued its journey.



3 ☐

If travelling by plane is too stressful, why not take the train? A man from Darlington, in England, read that it was cheaper to buy a ticket to Durham than Darlington. **Strangely**, Durham was farther away. He thought it was OK, so he bought a ticket and got off one stop early. When station staff checked his ticket, they said it was for the wrong station, and asked him to pay £155 extra!

4 ☐

The Eurostar train from London to Paris or Brussels is a nice way to travel, isn't it? Well, not always. In December 2009, several trains stopped in the tunnel. One family said that there were no lights, no air conditioning, no food and no water on their train. After several hours, they got off and walked through the tunnel to find another train which was warmer. **Fortunately**, no-one told them they had the wrong ticket.



5 ☐

Finally, a story about ferry travel. During a bad storm one winter, the ferry from Portsmouth to Bilbao spent 36 hours at sea. **Eventually**, it came into a harbour – in Brest, northern France. Unfortunately, it was also Christmas Eve and there were no ferries back to the UK until after the holidays. Passengers were left in Brest, 1,000 km from Bilbao. Their only choices were to find a local hotel, rent a car and drive all night or try to get to an airport and a very expensive, last-minute flight. Happy Christmas!

Of course, events like these don't happen very often. For most of us, journeys are still relaxing – except for queues, delays, security checks, strikes and Icelandic volcanoes, of course.

DEPARTURES

TIME	DESTINATION	FLIGHT	GATE	REMARKS
12:39	LONDON	BA 903	31	CANCELLED
12:57	SYDNEY	QF5723	27	CANCELLED
13:08	TORONTO	AC5984	22	CANCELLED
13:21	TOKYO	3L 608	41	DELAYED
13:37	HONG KONG	CX5471	29	CANCELLED
13:48	MADRID	IB3941	30	DELAYED
14:19	BERLIN	LH5021	28	CANCELLED
14:35	NEW YORK	AA 997	11	CANCELLED
14:54	PARIS	AF5870	23	DELAYED
15:10	ROME	AZ5324	43	CANCELLED

1 Read the article and match headings A–F to paragraphs 1–5. There is one extra heading.

- A Can we join you?
B You haven't got a ticket.
C An unexpected stopover.
D We've arrived – but in the wrong country.
E Right name, wrong place.
F You haven't gone far enough!

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Read the article again. Choose the correct answers A, B or C.

- The couple in the first paragraph had a problem because
A the flight they booked didn't go to the place they thought.
B the flight didn't leave from Birmingham.
C they didn't check where the flight left from.
- The man on the flight to Denver
A asked the woman not to use her reclining seat.
B had something that stopped the seat in front of him from reclining.
C was angry because he couldn't use his reclining seat.
- The man travelling to Darlington
A was on the wrong train.
B went past the station on his ticket.
C didn't know that he couldn't travel to Darlington with the ticket he bought.
- When the trains got stuck in the tunnel between England and France
A some passengers moved from one train to another.
B only people with the correct tickets could change trains.
C passengers got out and walked to the end of the tunnel.
- The passengers going to Bilbao definitely did not spend Christmas Day
A in England.
B in Bilbao.
C on a ferry.

3 Find the underlined words in the article which match the definitions below.

- People who work at a railway station. station staff
- Checks before you get on a plane to make sure you aren't carrying anything dangerous. _____
- A seat on a plane or a bus which can be moved back so that you can sleep. _____
- An adjective meaning something which is booked (a hotel, flight, etc.) very near to the time the person needs them. _____
- A place you can go to ask for help or information. _____
- Television screens or electronic screens in airports or railway stations which show when flights or trains leave and where passengers should go. _____

4 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

17/7: Holiday Day 1 (and 2)

I was very happy when I booked a ⁰last-minute flight to Turkey. It was a great deal – £150 cheaper than the normal price. But the journey was terrible! What a nightmare! I got to the airport early and, of course, went to look at the departures ¹_____ to see where to check in. Next to my flight number, it said: Please go to the information ²_____. So, I went and asked what was wrong. They said: 'The flight is leaving tomorrow at 5 a.m.!' I decided to go home but the ticket office at the railway station was closed. The station ³_____ didn't know why. I bought a ticket on the train – it cost £10 extra. The next day, I got to the airport at 3 a.m. There were lots of security ⁴_____. 'Take your boots off, take your belt off.' You know the sort of thing. At last I got on the plane. I sat down with a cup of coffee from the airport. I put it on the tray and then the person in front of me suddenly put her ⁵_____ seat down. My coffee fell onto my jeans and I couldn't move.

REMEMBER THIS

Adverbs of manner are often formed by adding -ly to adjectives and they describe actions and usually come after the verbs, e.g. *They work quietly*. However, when placed at the beginning of the sentence they can also describe when the action took place, e.g. *Suddenly (quickly and unexpectedly) it started to rain*, *Finally (after a long time) he arrived*, or the speaker's feelings about the actions, e.g. *Hopefully (I hope), there is a station near here*, *Amazingly (I find it amazing that) he survived the crash*. Here are some other adverbs that express the speaker's feelings: *strangely* (in a strange way), *eventually* (in the end), *unfortunately* (it is unlucky that), *fortunately* (it is lucky that).

WORD STORE 7E

Collocations

5 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

- I saw a story on a news show last night about two backpackers who walked from France to India.
- Reykjavík, Iceland is the world's n_____ m_____ capital. Well, Nuuk in Greenland is farther north but Greenland isn't an independent country.
- There's a world water c_____. That's why my little brother never has a shower!
- On the first day of the camping holiday, we couldn't put up the tent, we couldn't make a fire and we couldn't sleep. Luckily, things got b_____ after that.
- Sandra has planned a 250km cycling t_____ this summer. I don't think I'm that fit.
- We have decided to go kayaking round the whole of the United Kingdom to r_____ money for children in need.

7.5 Grammar

Present Perfect with just/yet/already

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 0 the / hotel / booked / haven't / I
I haven't booked the hotel.
- 1 gone / friends / holiday / have / my / on
_____?
- 2 Amanda / has / you / phoned
_____?
- 3 found / haven't / our / we / passports
_____.
- 4 the restaurant / Lisa / made / at / has / a reservation
_____.
- 5 parents / the airport / your / arrived / have / at
_____?
- 6 New York / has / to / Sue / this / three / times / been / year
_____.

2 ★ Rewrite the sentences from Exercise 1 with the word in capitals in the correct place.

- 0 I haven't booked the hotel yet. YET
- 1 _____ JUST
- 2 _____ YET
- 3 _____ YET
- 4 _____ JUST
- 5 _____ YET
- 6 _____ ALREADY

3 ★★ Complete the conversations with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms if possible.

- 1 Belinda: Do you want to get something to eat?
Mr Evans: No, thanks. I ⁰ ve already had (already/have) lunch.
Mrs Evans: Really? It's only 12.30. I ^a _____ (not eat anything/yet). I got up late and missed breakfast.
- 2 Mrs Perkins: ^a _____? (you send the postcards/yet)
Colin: No. I ^b _____ (just/buy) them. I ^c _____ (not write them/yet).
- 3 Mr Davies: Hi, Mum. We ^a _____ (just/arrive) at the hotel. We ^b _____ (not see the rooms/yet). Kelly ^c _____ (already/make) some friends in the children's play area. Emma ^d _____ (just/get) the room key from the receptionist. Oh, and Billy ... Talk to you later.



4 ★★ Complete the conversation with the words from the box and the correct forms of the verbs. Use short forms if possible.

already book already invite just-get just go
just start not have yet (x2) you decide

- Guy: Hi. You look nice.
Judith: Thanks. I ⁰ ve just got back from Turkey.
Guy: Wow. Lucky you.
Judith: What about you? Have you been anywhere nice?
Guy: I ¹ _____ a holiday ² _____ . I ³ _____ a new job and my first holiday is in December.
Judith: Oh, dear! ⁴ _____ where to go ⁵ _____ ?
Guy: Oh, I know exactly. I ⁶ _____ the holiday. To Cuba.
Judith: Cuba? My neighbour ⁷ _____ there. He left yesterday.
Guy: Oh, right. I'd like to meet him and talk about his visit when he gets back.
Judith: Well, I ⁸ _____ him for coffee and cakes when he gets back. He likes showing his photos to people and he always buys me a nice present when he goes away. You can come too. Sunday, August 17th, about 4 p.m.
Guy: That's great. Thanks very much.



SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the sentences. Use the correct Present Perfect forms of the words from the box and the words in brackets. There are two extra sets of words in the box. Use short forms if possible.

already/make already/see already/take
arrive/yet do just/find just/hear speak take

- 0 We're at the railway station but the train hasn't arrived yet. (the train)
- 1 _____ about your accident. Are you OK? (I)
- 2 _____ six exams and he's got two more tomorrow. (Paul)
- 3 _____ this film. Can we watch something else? (I)
- 4 _____ any photos yet. Is your camera broken? (you)
- 5 _____ a flat to rent and she's getting ready to leave home. (my sister)
- 6 _____ to you about his holiday idea yet? (Ray)

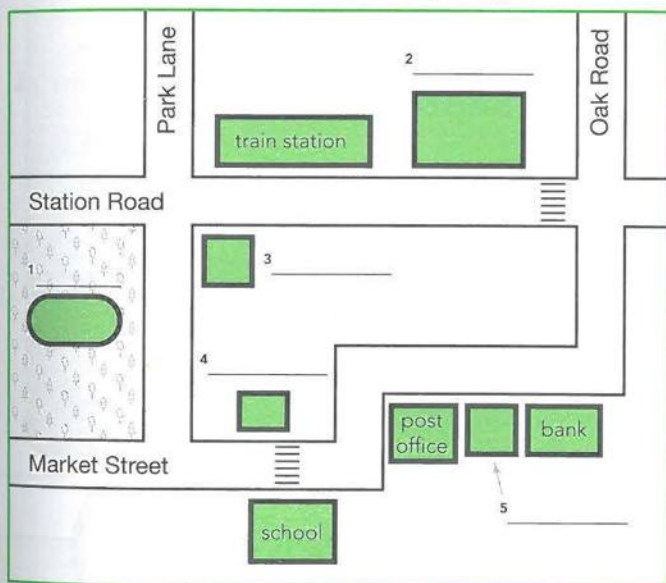
7.6 Speaking language practice

Asking for and giving directions

1 Choose the correct words.

- 1 You know where Katy lives? Well, Jason lives next house / door to her.
- 2 Can you tell me the way / get to the post office?
- 3 Go out of the station and take / turn right.
- 4 Go straight on / turn for about 200 metres.
- 5 Walk on / along the road for a kilometre.
- 6 The bank is opposite / between the café.
- 7 The bookshop is on / in the corner of Green Street and Hill Street.
- 8 How do I way / get to the school?
- 9 Turn / Go across the road here.
- 10 Take / Turn the first turning on the right.
- 11 The café is next / opposite to the cinema.
- 12 My house is in / on the left.

2 Read sentences A-E and label the picture.



- A The chemist's is on the corner of Station Road and Park Lane.
- B The café is between the bank and the post office.
- C The bookshop is opposite the school.
- D The theatre is next to the railway station.
- E The stadium is in the park.

3 Complete the conversation between two people talking about the map from Exercise 2. First letters are given.

- Max: Do you want to meet at my favourite café?
- Abbie: OK. How do I ⁰get to it? I'm coming by train.
- Max: Come out of the railway station and ¹t_____ left. Go ²p_____ the theatre and then go ³a_____ the road. There's a crossing there. Go ⁴s_____ on ⁵a_____ Oak Road. ⁶G_____ across the road again and the café is there. It's ⁷b_____ a bank and a post office.
- Abbie: Great, thanks.

4 hours later ...

Abbie: The train arrived and I started walking but I think I went the wrong way. I came out of the station and I turned ⁸r_____. I went across Park Lane and then across Station Road into the park. I'm ⁹n_____ to the stadium now.

Max: Oh, dear! Go back to Station Road and turn right. Then ¹⁰t_____ the first ¹¹t_____ on your right. That's Park Lane. Walk along Park Lane until you get to Market Street. Then turn ¹²l_____. Not right! Go past the bookshop. That's ¹³o_____ a school. You can cross the road here. Keep going, straight on. The café is ¹⁴o_____ your right. It's next ¹⁵t_____ a bank.

4 Complete the conversations with the words and phrases from the box. There are two extra words or phrases.

across along between corner
get next on opposite out past
straight take turn way where's

Conversation 1

Cathy: Excuse me, can you tell me the ⁰way to the cinema, please?

Kim: Of course. Go ¹_____ on for about half a kilometre. Go ²_____ the bank and the shops and the cinema is ³_____ your right. It's ⁴_____ to a supermarket.

Cathy: Great, thanks.

Conversation 2

Dave: Excuse me, ¹_____ the post office?

Kim: It's on the ²_____ of Elm Lane and London Road.

Cathy: Elm Lane?

Kim: Go ³_____ this road for 200 metres, then ⁴_____ the second turning on the right. That's Elm Lane.

Dave: Oh, OK. Thanks.

Conversation 3

Maggie: Excuse me. How do I ¹_____ to the railway station?

Kim: Go ²_____ this road – be careful, it's very busy – and ³_____ left. There's a bookshop.

Maggie: Oh, yes. Turner's.

Kim: That's right. Get the number 54 bus from outside Turner's. The railway station is a long way from here. It's ⁴_____ the market and the main road to Birmingham. It's five kilometres from here.

Maggie: Oh, right. Thanks.

7.7 Writing

An email of enquiry

- 1 Match the beginnings 1–10 to the correct endings a–l. There are two extra endings.

- 0 Dear
- 1 I am writing to enquire if
- 2 I am writing in response to
- 3 Please reply to
- 4 Yours
- 5 You can email me
- 6 I would be happy to
- 7 I look forward
- 8 Would it be possible
- 9 Could you please
- 10 Thank you for your help in

- a the offer on your website.
- b at Craig_Donaldsons@web.mail
- c for you to return my wallet to me by post?
- d sincerely,
- e this matter.
- f are able to help me.
- g I left my diary at your hotel.
- h pay for the phone calls.
- i about your advertisement.
- j send me more details of your offer?
- k this email.
- l to hearing from you soon.
- m Mr Salmond,

- 2 Complete the email with the words from the box. There are five extra words.

at could enquire faithfully forward
hope if in matter Mr number on
organise possible reply response
sincerely Sir soon would

Dear ⁰ Sir / Madam,

I have booked a room at your hotel for four nights from September 10th–14th this year. I am writing to ¹ _____ about taxi transfers to and from the airport. Would it be ² _____ for a driver to meet me at the airport and bring me straight to the hotel? My flight arrives at 11.50 p.m. and I am worried about transport at that time of night. On the 14th, I have to leave at 4.20 a.m. I ³ _____ you are able to ⁴ _____ something, even at that time in the morning. ⁵ _____ you please tell me the cost of a taxi ride? Also, do I pay the driver or the hotel? Naturally, I ⁶ _____ be happy to pay more than the normal price of a taxi for this service. Could you please ⁷ _____ to this email? You can contact me ⁸ _____ toby17@bleep.mail or ⁹ _____ my mobile. My mobile ¹⁰ _____ is +44 1274342. Thank you for your help in this ¹¹ _____. I look ¹² _____ to hearing from you ¹³ _____. Yours ¹⁴ _____, Toby Blackstone

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 3 Read the email from your friend, Sandy.

I know you're looking for a cheap summer holiday. Here's an advert I saw online! Why don't you write to them for some more details?

Write a letter of enquiry in about 100 words to the travel company, asking for more details and if they can send you a brochure.

Late summer deals:

One week- or two-week holidays in **Turkey** from £200 a person. Flights and meals included.

Offer available from **September 3rd–20th**

Email for more details at: **turkoffer@travel.mail**

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my email of enquiry:

- I have used appropriate opening and finishing phrases, e.g. *Dear Sir or Madam, Yours faithfully.* ☐
- I have given my reason for writing. ☐
- I have asked about the details of the offer. ☐
- I have given my contact details. ☐
- I have thanked them for their help and asked for a reply. ☐
- I have not used contractions (e.g. *I'm / aren't / that's*). ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have written 100 words. ☐
- My email is neat and clear. ☐

7.8 Word Practice

Sport and travel

1 Find ten sports in the word square.

A	K	A	W	E	D	B	A	D	M	H
B	A	D	M	I	N	T	O	N	K	O
G	R	F	O	O	T	E	B	A	J	C
F	A	S	Y	H	O	N	G	S	O	K
Z	T	A	B	Y	C	N	H	K	G	E
Z	E	I	U	O	Y	I	T	A	G	Y
Z	U	L	W	G	C	S	Y	T	I	R
U	O	I	K	A	Y	A	K	I	N	G
M	I	N	S	T	L	I	N	G	G	B
B	N	G	D	A	S	W	I	M	M	Y
A	G	P	Q	R	U	G	B	Y	A	R

2 What are the sports? Write the words.

1



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



3 Match the people 1-5 with the holidays a-e.

- 1 **Andy:** 'I want to go to the Arctic. I want to go skiing and I would like to see a polar bear!' ☐
 - 2 **Julia:** 'I like seeing different places. I want to visit France, Spain and Portugal.' ☐
 - 3 **Grace:** 'I hate visiting museums and things. I enjoy resting, reading my book and swimming.' ☐
 - 4 **Paul:** 'I enjoy working with my hands and I like learning practical skills. I would like to stay on a farm and help with the animals.' ☐
 - 5 **Emma:** 'I'm into outdoor activities and I like sleeping in a tent.' ☐
- a a beach holiday
 - b a camping holiday
 - c an adventure holiday
 - d a tour
 - e a working holiday

4 Use the secret code to read the message.

- 1 We're going to travel by ♠ ○ ♥ ♦ ►.
- 2 Our ▼ ○ ◀ ● ♦ ♠ leaves on Friday.
- 3 The ♦ ♣ ♠ ► ○ is expensive but very nice.
- 4 We want to visit the city ♥ ➡ ➡ ➡ ➡ ♥.
- 5 We mustn't forget to take our ♠ ♥ ➡ ➡ ♠ ♣ * * ♠ ➡.
- 6 I've already ■ ○ ○ ♦ ► ▲ the tickets.
- 7 I've made reservations for a tour around the city by ■ ♣ ♥ ♠.
- 8 I haven't packed my ○ ➡ ● ● ♥ ● ► yet.

♥	■	□	▲	►	▼	●	♦	◀	□	◇	○	♥
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M

												
N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z

7.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some but have some questions
 😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
7.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about different kinds of holidays and transport.					Students' Book pp. 84–85 Word Store p. 15 Workbook pp. 80–81
7.2	Grammar	I can talk about actions that happened some time in the past.					Students' Book p. 86 Workbook p. 82
7.3	Listening	I can identify detail in short travel conversations.					Students' Book p. 87 Workbook p. 83
7.4	Reading	I can understand a magazine article about travel.					Students' Book pp. 88–89 Workbook pp. 84–85
7.5	Grammar	I can use the Present Perfect with <i>just</i> , <i>already</i> and <i>yet</i> .					Students' Book p. 90 Workbook p. 86
7.6	Speaking	I can ask for and give simple directions to a place.					Students' Book p. 91 Workbook p. 87
7.7	Writing	I can write a formal email of enquiry.					Students' Book pp. 92–93 Workbook p. 88

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

7.10 Self-check

1 One word in each sentence is **wrong**. Cross out the wrong words and write the correct ones.

- 0 We're going out for dinner on Saturday. Have you done a reservation yet? made
- 1 Our class are trying to think of ways to rise money for a school trip to Norway. _____
- 2 We visited all the main signs in the area and took photos of them. _____
- 3 We booked three arrangements from our hotel. They were all interesting, especially the coach trip to a waterfall. _____
- 4 Canberra isn't the southernfar capital in the world. Wellington, in New Zealand, is farther south. _____
- 5 The weather was terrible for the first few days but, luckily, it got best later on. _____

/5

2 Look at the definitions and write the words. Write one letter in each gap.

- 0 This is a place where you sleep and eat the first meal of the day.
bed and breakfast
- 1 This is the word for a journey by plane.

- 2 This is a private home where people can pay to stay and have meals.

- 3 This is a kind of ship that carries people and sometimes cars across a river or a narrow area of water.

- 4 This is a cheap place to stay and is sometimes only for young people.

- 5 This is a kind of holiday when you carry your things in a bag on your back.
_____ holiday

/5

3 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First and last letters are given.

- 0 You don't need to get a **b**rochure to see photos of the hotel. They've got a website.
- 1 The train to the airport leaves from **p**_____ **m** 8. We should get there early because I don't want to miss it.
- 2 The other **p**_____ **s** on the plane were quite noisy. I think a lot of them knew each other.
- 3 We haven't got much money so we're staying in a tent on a **c**_____ **e** near the sea.
- 4 In London, we travelled around by **u**_____ **d**, or the Tube as people there call it.
- 5 You've got a lot of **l**_____ **e** for a three-day trip! I'm only taking a small bag.

/5

4 Complete the conversation between Jen and Mum. Use the words in brackets and the correct forms of the verbs from the box. There are two extra verbs.

arrive book give go
have leave look at make

J: Hi, Mum. (We/just) ⁰we've just arrived at the airport.

M: ¹(you/the departures board/yet) _____?

J: Yes, we have. Our plane ²(not/Spain/yet) _____
_____. It's about 5 hours late!

M: Oh, no! What are you doing now?

J: Well, we're waiting with all the other passengers. Someone from the airline is here. Wait a minute ...
³(She/just) _____ us £10 for food. We can check in our bags and go through security and spend the money after that. That's good. ⁴(I/not/breakfast/yet) _____
_____! I'm worried about our transport in Spain. ⁵(We/already) _____ seats on the 14.38 train from Madrid to Ronda. I don't think we can use them on any other train.

M: Don't worry. Ask the woman from the airline and phone me later when you know more.

J: OK, bye Mum.

/5

5 Complete the conversation with the phrases from the box. There are five extra phrases.

Did you enjoy did you go Have you enjoyed
Have you ever travelled have you gone I did
I have We have been We have slept
We slept We went

Ross: ⁰Have you ever travelled by ferry?

Henry: Yes, ¹_____. Once.

Ross: Really? Where ²_____?

Henry: ³_____ from Holland to England.

Ross: ⁴_____ it or was it boring?

Henry: It wasn't boring at all. ⁵_____ on the boat and, in the morning, we were in England.

/5

6 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- 1 You can book all your _____ - hotels, campsites - online.
A arrangements B accommodation C reservations
- 2 Would you like to go on _____ to see the local sights?
A a tour B excursion C feet
- 3 Mike went on holiday three weeks ago and he hasn't arrived back _____.
A ever B yet C already
- 4 Has Steve _____ anything on his travel blog yet?
A wrote B write C written
- 5 Emma's so excited about her school trip. She's _____ packed her clothes and they aren't going until next week.
A already B yet C never

/5

Total /30

8

NATURE

8.1 Vocabulary

Landscape • wildlife • environmental problems

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Find seven more words in the word search and write them under the correct headings.

S	E	M	O	N	O	F	F	P
C	R	O	C	O	D	I	L	E
O	T	N	A	T	O	S	O	N
M	A	K	B	U	S	H	W	G
T	R	E	E	B	T	I	E	U
U	A	Y	T	A	E	M	R	I
L	G	R	A	S	S	P	O	N

Plants

Animals

crocodile

WORD STORE 8A

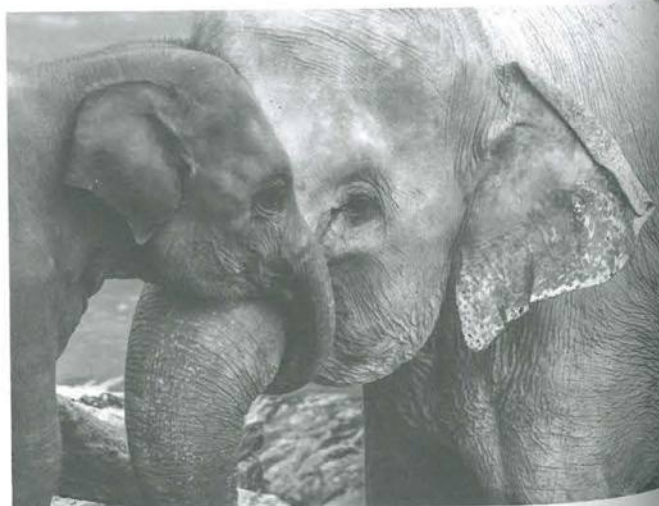
Landscape

- 2 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap. First and last letters are given.
- We sailed to a small island in the middle of the ocean.
 - The schoolchildren went for a walk through the f _____ t to look at the trees and other plants.
 - Can anyone explain the difference between a j _____ e and a b _____ t? They're both hot, wet and full of trees.
 - The town is in a v _____ y between two hills. A b _____ r runs through the middle of the town and it's a popular place for kayaking.
 - We walked up to the top of the m _____ n and had an amazing view of the land below.
 - I love swimming in our local pool but swimming in the s _____ a is much more exciting.
 - Lots of people come to see the w _____ l. It's about 80 metres high – the sound of the water is deafening!
 - The c _____ l r _____ f looks like rocks but, in fact, it is alive and it is home to thousands of fish. It's a wonderful place and we need to protect it.

WORD STORE 8B

Wildlife

- 3 Read the descriptions and write the names of the wildlife. Write one letter in each gap.
- The biggest land animal in the world. It lives in Africa and India. elephant
 - It's a big animal. It can be brown, black or even white. It can be dangerous but lots of young children have a toy version of it. _____
 - This is a large cat which lives in cold mountains in Asia. It is light grey with black spots. _____
 - This is an ape (not a monkey!). Tarzan was friends with one of them. _____
 - This is a beautiful flying insect with colourful wings. _____
 - This is the biggest animal on Earth. It lives in the sea but it isn't a fish. There are different kinds – Blue (the biggest), Killer (it is black and white and also called an Orca) and others. _____
 - This is a dangerous kind of large fish. The Great White is the most famous. The film *Jaws* was about one of these. _____
 - This is a small creature that is born on land but lives in the sea. It has got a hard shell on its back. This shell is also its home but this animal has got four legs. Number 8 hasn't got any legs. _____
 - This is a small creature which carries its home on its back. You can eat them, especially in France. Try them in garlic butter! _____



WORD STORE 8C

Environmental problems

- 4 Complete the text with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

breaking change cutting destroy
heating hunting noise pollute
~~pollution~~ protect remove warming

A Greener World

Are you concerned about the environment? Do you want to do something about environmental problems locally, nationally and internationally?

Why not join **A Greener World**?

We campaign against:

- air and water ⁹ pollution and all companies and countries that ¹ _____ the air and water,
- illegal ² _____ and fishing,
- any activities which lead to global ³ _____ and climate ⁴ _____,
- ⁵ _____ down trees in the world's rainforests,
- companies which ⁶ _____ the natural environment,
- workplaces with machines which make a lot of ⁷ _____.

Join us today and help to ⁸ _____ our world!



REMEMBER THIS

English uses the definite article *the* in front of some geographical names but not in front of others. If in doubt, your best bet is to look it up in a dictionary or online. Here's a general list of guidelines:

Do not use *the* before the name of:

- most countries, e.g. Portugal, Russia, Spain
- towns or cities, e.g. New York, Paris, London
- lakes, e.g. Lake Ontario, Lake Placid, Bear Lake
- mountains, e.g. Mount Everest, Mount Kilimanjaro
- continents, e.g. North America, Africa
- islands, e.g. Fiji Islands, Prince Edward Island

Use *the* before the name of:

- some countries, e.g. the USA, the UK
- rivers, oceans, seas, e.g. the Mississippi River, the Atlantic Ocean, the Mediterranean
- mountain ranges, e.g. the Rockies, the Dolomites, the Alps

- 5 Read **REMEMBER THIS**. Complete the sentences with the where necessary.

- 0 They visited a village in the Andes.
- 1 Have you ever seen _____ Mount Fuji?
- 2 Lemurs live on the island of _____ Madagascar.
- 3 I want to go to _____ United Kingdom to learn English.
- 4 _____ Pacific Ocean is the biggest ocean on Earth.
- 5 I want to live in _____ France for a couple of years.
- 6 _____ Lake Balaton is in _____ Hungary.
- 7 Is _____ Nile is the longest river in the world?
- 8 She went rock climbing in _____ Alps.
- 9 _____ Mediterranean Sea is between _____ Europe and _____ Africa.

REMEMBER BETTER

Some geographical names in English may sound similar in your language, but may differ in spelling. In order to remember the English spelling and whether to use the definite article or not, make a list of places that you would like to visit. Use different colours to categorise the places, e.g. highlight the oceans in green, the seas in blue, etc.

Wish list – 10 places I want to visit
the Nile, Venice, the Amazon River, ...

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 6 Choose the correct words.

- 1 We didn't swim in the sea because we heard that there was a 4-m long *shark* / *turtle* / *snail* swimming close to the beach.
- 2 This was a forest but people have *cut down* / *cut out* / *cut off* all the trees.
- 3 The cars on the roads near my house *do* / *are* / *make* a lot of noise at night.
- 4 We should do more to *destroy* / *protect* / *pollute* the environment before it's too late.
- 5 The village was next to a river in a *valley* / *ocean* / *rock* between two mountains.

- 7 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- 0 Illegal hunting means that elephants are dying.
- 1 In the middle of the lake, there is a beautiful _____ with one tree on it.
- 2 Climate _____ is a good phrase because it isn't just temperatures that are different. There is more rain and there are stronger winds and other things.
- 3 There's a big problem with water _____ in our rivers.
- 4 We went swimming near a coral _____ and saw lots of beautiful, colourful fish.
- 5 People who live near the sea are very worried about the effects of global _____ on sea levels.

8.2 Grammar

Future with will

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the positive sentences (+), negative sentences (-) and questions (?) using the subject, modal and verb in capitals.

1 WE / CAN / SAVE

- + We can save elephants.
 - _____ all the animals.
 ? _____ panda bears?

2 WE / SHOULD / CYCLE

- + _____ every day.
 - _____ after dark.
 ? _____ in the town centre?

2 ★ Complete the conversation with the correct will forms of the verbs in brackets.

A Greener World

In 25 years ...

Elephants ⁰won't be (not/be) in danger. There ¹_____ (not/be) any elephants.

Icebergs ²_____ (not/melt) in the summer.

There ³_____ (not/be) any ice in our oceans.

People ⁴_____ (not/cut down) the rainforests.

Rainforests ⁵_____ (not/exist).

Rivers ⁶_____ (be) more polluted and all the fish ⁷_____ (be) dead.

The Earth's climate ⁸_____ (get) hotter.

Many plants and animals ⁹_____ (die out).

Scientists ¹⁰_____ (not/be) able to solve the problem of global warming alone.

We ¹¹_____ (destroy) the environment.

... or can we change our way of life?

We think people can. Let us show you how.



4 ★★★ Use the words from the box to make a full conversation between Alison and the interviewer. Use short forms of will where possible.

I know it destroy there be they ask
 they want ~~we make~~ we not ask we try you like

I: Thank you for your interest in A Greener World. Have you got any questions you'd like to ask before you join?

A: Yes. ⁰Will we make the world cleaner and better?

I: Well, ¹_____. We organise talks and meetings and other events. Don't worry, ²_____ you to do anything illegal. At the moment, we want to stop a new road. ³_____ the habitats of lots of animals. I'm sure ⁴_____ TV and newspaper reporters there. ⁵_____ to talk to some of us.

A: It all sounds very exciting. Oh wait ... ⁶_____ me any questions? How ⁷_____ what to say?

I: Don't worry. Our organiser, Meg, has got all the details. She's great. I'm sure ⁸_____ her.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the second sentence. Use short forms of will where possible.

0 **NOW:** People use petrol in their cars.

IN 20 YEARS: People won't use petrol in their cars. All cars will use green energy.

1 **NOW:** I can't speak French.

IN 20 YEARS: _____ speak French very well. I will live in France.

2 **NOW:** It sometimes snows in England.

IN 20 YEARS: _____ in England? Or will global warming mean that temperatures are too high for snow?

3 **NOW:** People can go fishing in rivers.

IN 20 YEARS: _____ to go fishing in rivers. The water will be polluted.

4 **NOW:** Planes travel to Australia in about 24 hours.

IN 20 YEARS: _____ to Australia in about 24 minutes. I'll go there after school!

5 **NOW:** You can download a film from the Internet in about half an hour.

IN 20 YEARS: _____ to download a film from the Internet in half a second.

6 **NOW:** There are thousands of chimpanzees in Africa.

IN 20 YEARS: _____ any chimpanzees in Africa? Or will they only live in zoos?

3 ★★ Complete the questions about the future.

0 What will the world be like (What/the world/be like) in twenty years?

☐ Better ☐ Worse ☐ The same

1 _____ (children/learn) at home or at school?

☐ Home ☐ School

2 _____ (what country/win) the 2034 football World Cup?

3 _____ (What language/children learn) in school?

☐ English ☐ Chinese ☐ Spanish

4 _____ (How many people/there be) in the world?

☐ >10 billion ☐ 6-9 billion ☐ < 6 billion

5 _____ (What/people/do) on the Internet?

☐ Go to virtual worlds ☐ Look at cat photos
☐ There won't be an Internet

8.3 Listening language practice

Degrees of certainty • weather collocations • weather nouns and adjectives

- 1 Read the text. Complete gaps 1–4 with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

[bright clear ~~dry~~ heavy light strong wet]

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.19 MP3•145

I: And here's Nick Newman with the late-night weather.

N: Good evening. Well, it seems spring's almost here. Across the British Isles, tomorrow will be warmer, but not everywhere ...

So, let's look at the weather in more detail, and I'll start with the South. In all of Southern England, tomorrow will be the sunniest day of the week; it will be ⁰ dry, with ¹ _____ skies and sunshine all day. In most places, there'll be a ² _____ wind, but it will still feel quite warm; temperatures will be around eighteen degrees in most of the area and will get to twenty in Cornwall.

Across Wales and the Midlands, the morning will be foggy, but the fog should soon clear. After that we can expect a sunny day with some cloud. There will be a few showers with the possibility of thunder in the late afternoon. The morning won't be very warm – only eight degrees, I'm afraid. But it should get warmer during the afternoon and the temperature will rise to fourteen degrees.

In the North of England, Saturday will be a windy day, and that ³ _____ west wind will bring rainy weather from the Atlantic. It will be cloudy with showers most of the day but there will be some sunny moments. Temperatures will be around thirteen degrees, but it will feel colder in the wind.

Now for Scotland and Northern Ireland. Well, it's definitely not spring here yet. There will be a lot of cloud around and quite a lot of rain. The Highlands will have the wettest weather. The rain will be ⁴ _____ there, and high up in the mountains it may still snow tonight and tomorrow night. Temperatures at best around eleven degrees.

- 2 Complete the collocations with the words from the box in Exercise 1.

sunshine: bright

skies: 1 _____ (no clouds)
..... cloudy / overcast (clouds)

wind: strong
..... 2 _____

rain / snow: 3 _____
..... light

day / weather: wet (rain)
..... 4 _____ (no rain)

REMEMBER BETTER

Using an antonym can help you express what you want when you don't remember the word you wanted to use. In the conversation below, the speaker forgot the collocation *light wind*:

The wind was very *er ... er ... weak ... er low ... er soft ... er*
The wind was very ... it wasn't strong at all.

- 3 Complete the second sentence using the correct antonym.

- 0 There was pleasant, light wind so we weren't too hot on the beach.
The wind wasn't strong and it was cool on the beach.
- 1 Wake up and look out of the window. The sky isn't cloudy at all.
Wake up and look out of the window. The sky is beautifully _____.
- 2 I don't need a coat. It's raining but it's quite a light rain.
I don't need a coat. The rain isn't very _____.
- 3 The weather in France wasn't great but, fortunately, it was dry.
The weather in France wasn't great but, fortunately, it wasn't _____.
- 4 There was a light snow but it was safe to drive.
It was safe to drive because the snow wasn't very _____.

WORD STORE 8D

Weather nouns and adjectives

- 4 Choose the correct words.

- 1 It's very *wind / windy* today. Be careful when you drive to work.
- 2 You should go out. The *sun / sunny* is shining and it's a beautiful day.
- 3 We get a lot of *fog / foggy* here because we live in a valley near a river.
- 4 It's very *cloud / cloudy*. Do you think it will rain later?
- 5 It may *rain / rainy* later so take a coat.
- 6 It was a *rain / foggy* morning when Dad crashed into the car in front of him.
- 7 How's the weather where you are? It's a horrible, *rain / rainy* day here.
- 8 We had beautiful weather on holiday. It was *sun / sunny* every day.
- 9 What a lovely day. There isn't a *cloud / cloudy* in the sky.
- 10 There will be a strong *wind / windy* all day so it will be great for windsurfing.

8.4 Reading

Long distance walks • adverbs and adjectives • adjectives and nouns

Glossary

flat (adj) = not going up or down

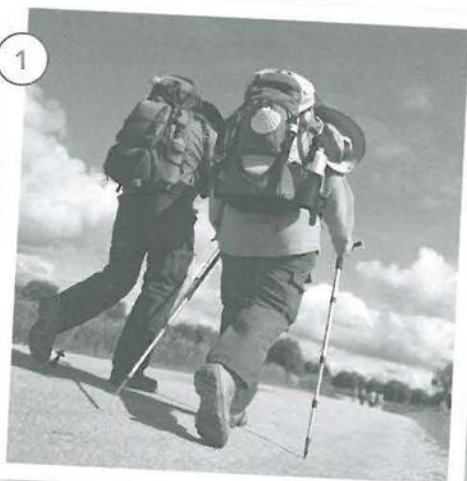
well-signposted (adj) = there are plenty of signposts and the information they give you is clear and easy to follow

coast (n) = the area where the land meets the sea

inland (adj) = away from the coast

steep (adj) = a road, hill, etc., that is steep slopes at a high angle

have a good head for heights = not afraid of being high above the ground

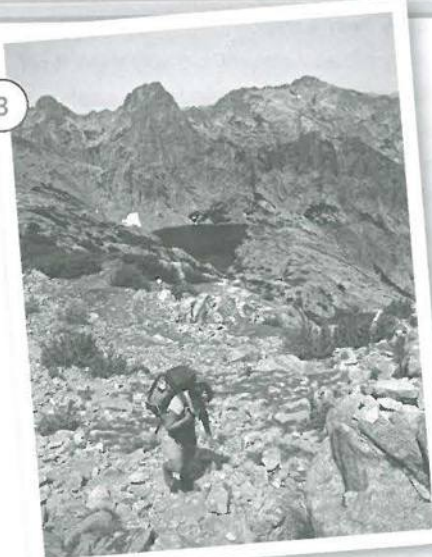
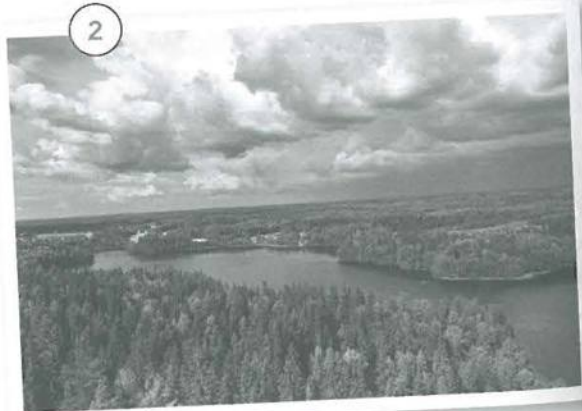


Hiking in Finland

I've just come back from Finland. My friends from university invited me to join them on an eight-day hike. The walk is called The Bear Trail and it is in the Oulanka National Park in north-eastern Finland. It's a beautiful walk through forests and across rivers and lakes. We stayed at campsites and carried clothes, food and tents on our backs. I'm not the fittest person in the world but I was able to finish. I loved the incredibly clear air, the beautiful views and the sounds of nature. In my opinion, it is perfect for anyone who wants to start long-distance walking as it is almost completely flat and well-signposted. Just try not to fill your backpack up with things which you won't need.

Camino di Santiago

It was the walk of a lifetime. 800km from the south of France, over the Pyrenees mountains and across northern Spain to Santiago de Compostela. It all started so well. The path up to the Pyrenees was magical and it was good to meet other people doing the same walk. Everyone was enthusiastic about the walk ahead. But in Spain, the route often followed roads. It was noisy and monotonous, with unchanging views for hours and hours. More and more people joined the walk. They were generally friendly but it wasn't the experience I expected. I'd like to go back to the Pyrenees and hike there again but I'll stop there next time.



The GR20, Corsica

Corsica is a magnificent island with some wonderfully picturesque walks along the coast and inland. But, for walkers, it is famous for the GR20, Europe's most difficult long distance walk. It goes from north to south and up and down from two hundred metres to over 2,200 metres above sea-level. The frighteningly steep and rocky paths are beautiful but very demanding. Our guides will help you to complete the whole 180km in fifteen days. The price includes transport, accommodation in tents and food. You should be in good health with experience of mountain walking and a good head for heights. No climbing experience is necessary.

1 Read the three sentences from the texts and match the places A–C to the photos 1–3.

- A The Bear Trail: It's a beautiful walk through forests and across rivers and lakes. ☐
- B Camino di Santiago: But in Spain, the walk often followed roads. ☐
- C GR20 Corsica: It goes ... from two hundred metres to over 2,200 metres above sea-level. ☐

2 Read the texts and decide if the sentences are right (R), wrong (W) or if the text doesn't say (DS).

- 1 The Bear Trail takes just over a week to complete. ☐
- 2 The hiker in Finland swam in a lake during the walk. ☐
- 3 Walking the Bear Trail is good for beginners. ☐
- 4 The walker in Spain was disappointed by the experience. ☐
- 5 This walker wants to repeat only the Spanish part of the walk. ☐
- 6 Text 3 is an advertisement. ☐
- 7 The Corsican walk is fine for people who have never walked in mountains before. ☐

3 Choose the correct meaning A or B for the underlined adjectives in the text.

- 1 magical
A amazing, wonderful
B strange, frightening
- 2 enthusiastic
A extremely tired
B feeling or showing a lot of interest and excitement about something
- 3 monotonous
A dangerous
B boring
- 4 magnificent
A beautiful, wonderful
B very big
- 5 demanding
A unattractive and boring
B difficult to do

4 Choose the correct words.

The Isles of Scilly are a ¹magical / demanding / enthusiastic place with clear, blue sea and yellow beaches. It is the perfect place to relax. Teenagers who are looking for an exciting nightlife may find a holiday here quite ²demanding / magnificent / monotonous as there isn't a lot to do. Most people love the islands and some people decide to move here after a holiday. My parents did it before I was born. I'm glad. I go to a school with ten other children. Our teacher is very ³enthusiastic / magnificent / monotonous and always tries to make our lessons interesting. She also gives us a lot of ⁴enthusiastic / demanding / magnificent tests so we have to work hard. My favourite island here is Tesco. It has a ⁵magnificent / monotonous / demanding tropical garden with beautiful flowers from all over the world. You should come here. You'll love it.

REMEMBER THIS

Adverbs often show the speaker's attitude to what they are describing:

- incredibly clear – extremely clear
completely flat – totally flat, with no hills
generally friendly – usually friendly
wonderfully picturesque – beautifully picturesque
frighteningly steep – so steep that it is really scary

5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Complete the second sentence with an adverb and an adjective so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- 0 The town centre was quiet, which is unusual on a Saturday afternoon.
On Saturday afternoon, the town centre was unusually quiet.
- 1 The exam was difficult. It was terrible!
The exam was _____.
- 2 Our local river is polluted. It's horrible.
Our local river is _____.
- 3 Climate change is happening quickly. It's very frightening.
Climate change is happening _____.
- 4 The fish near the coral reef were very colourful.
The colours were incredible.
The fish near the coral reef were _____.

WORD STORE 8E

Nouns and adjectives

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 0 The environment is important for all of us. Why don't people care more about it? **IMPORTANCE**
- 1 This path is very _____. Don't walk along it alone or in bad weather. **DANGER**
- 2 This was a _____ island before they built all these hotels. **PICTURE**
- 3 Oh, wow. That looks absolutely _____. Where is it? **BEAUTY**
- 4 We stayed in a very _____ town. In fact, it was quite boring. **PEACE**
- 5 We stayed on a magical Greek island with the _____ white houses that you see on all the postcards. **CHARACTER**
- 6 Of course I'm scared of heights. It isn't _____ to be so high up on a path which is about 50 cm wide! **NATURE**

8.5 Grammar

be going to

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Use the words to make future plans and hopes. Add extra words where necessary and use short forms if possible.

- 0 I want to get (I/want/get) into the school basketball team.
- 1 _____ (I/should/be) more friendly.
- 2 _____ (I/not/want/fail) my exams.
- 3 _____ (I/like/go) travelling.
- 4 _____ (I/must/get) fit.
- 5 _____ (I/not/want/waste) my time.
- 6 _____ (I/planning/get) a job.

2 ★ Look at the plans and complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb.

Plans	
✓	✗
study every day	play computer games
write a blog	eat fast food
read some books	be late for school
help my parents	argue with my girlfriend

- 0 I'm going to study for my exams every day.
- 1 I'm not going _____ fast food.
- 2 I'm going _____ my parents.
- 3 I'm not going _____ with my girlfriend.
- 4 I'm going _____ a blog.
- 5 I'm not going _____ computer games.
- 6 I'm going _____ some books.
- 7 I'm not going _____ late for school.

3 ★ ★ Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 Tom: university / are / at / study / what / you / to / going
What are you going to study at university?
 Adam: I'm / study / going / Maths / to

- 2 Jon: invite to / people / to / how many / party /
 going / are / your / you
 a _____?
 Lucy: not / to / I'm / party / going / have / a / this year
 b _____
- 3 Neil: going / project / is / our / to / Bob / us / help / with
 a _____?
 Tammy: he / no / isn't
 b _____
- 4 Pat: weekend / Steve and Mark / are / going /
 visit you / to / this
 a _____?
 Ruth: they / yes / are
 b _____

4 ★ ★ ★ Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words in brackets and **be going to**.

Mark: What are you going to give (What/you/give)
 Angela for her birthday?

Rick: I don't know. I haven't thought about it yet.
 1 _____ (I/go) shopping on
 Saturday and try to find something. Do you want
 to come?

Mark: I can't. 2 _____ (My dad/give)
 me a driving lesson.

Rick: Really! 3 _____ (you/have)
 lessons with a teacher as well?

Mark: 4 _____ (Yes/be) but Dad said
 I should have one lesson with him so that I know
 what I'm doing.

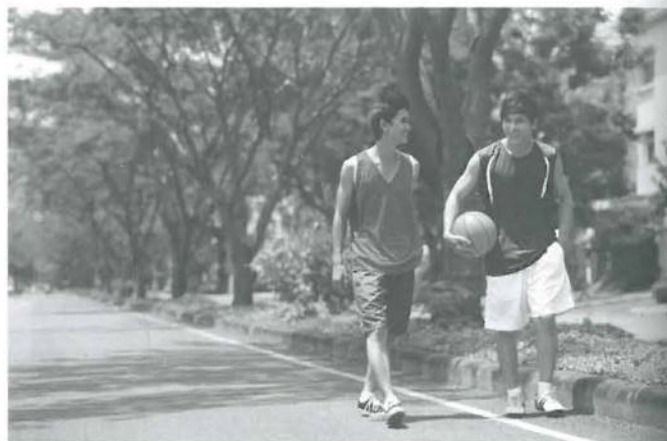
Rick: 5 _____ (I/not/drive).

Mark: Why not?

Rick: I don't like cars. They're bad for the environment.

Mark: So 6 _____ (how/you/get) to
 the town centre on Saturday?

Rick: Oh, 7 _____ (my mum/drive)
 me there.



SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Choose the correct options A, B or C.

- 1 What ___ going to do next year?
 A you B you are C are you
- 2 I ___ lend my phone to Harry again. He spoke to his
 friends for half an hour!
 A not going B 'm not going C 'm not going to
- 3 We're going ___ married in June. I hope the day will be
 sunny.
 A to get B get C getting
- 4 Are you going to wear a dress to the party?
 Yes, _____.
 A I am. B I'm going. C I'm wearing.
- 5 Felicity ___ phone us this evening.
 A is going B going to C is going to
- 6 Is your dad going to take us to the airport?
 No, he _____.
 A isn't going B isn't C not

8.6 Speaking language practice

Agreeing and disagreeing

1 Choose words and phrases that have a similar meaning to the underlined words and phrases.

1 Max: Governments should stop cigarette smoking in parks.

Elaine: I think so too. agree / disagree

2 Josh: Tourism is a bad thing for poorer countries.

Sue: I'm not sure. Absolutely. / I don't think so.

3 Pauline: Children should learn environmental studies at primary school.

Heather: Perhaps, but first they need to learn reading, writing and Maths. Exactly / Maybe

4 Stella: Free plastic bags in supermarkets are terrible for the environment.

Linda: Exactly. Absolutely. / Perhaps.

5 Jocelyn: They should close all the factories because the air in the town is very polluted.

Rebecca: I don't think that's a good idea. I disagree. / I think so too.

2 Complete the posts with one letter in each gap.

Have your say Energy saving ideas

I think all electrical devices should automatically switch off if people don't use them for thirty minutes. Some people leave computers and lights on all night.

Darren, aged 15

I think so, ⁰to.

¹A _____ y! ²a _____.

Sam, aged 14

³You're r _____.

Alison, aged 16

⁴M _____ you're right. At school we have lights that go off after two minutes – in the corridors – not the classrooms!

Chris, aged 16

⁵I d _____ e. How does a TV know if you are using it?

Simon, aged 17

⁶I'm not s _____ this is a good idea. What about old people or children? They may need to have a light on all night.

Toby, aged 17

⁷To be h _____, I don't think this idea makes a lot of ⁸s _____. Why not make electricity more expensive at night?

Jane, aged 18

⁹You have a p _____ but electricity is expensive already!

Carla, aged 18

3 Choose the correct options A, B or C.



Andy: This is my idea for our new environment campaign. What do you think?

Heidi: Well, to be ¹____, I don't think it makes a lot of sense.

Andy: Why not?

Heidi: Well, the Earth is smiling. It seems to me that it's saying that everything is OK and the Earth is happy.

Andy: I see what you ²____ but I ³____ you're right. It says here: 'Put a smile on the Earth's face'. That shows people what it's all about.

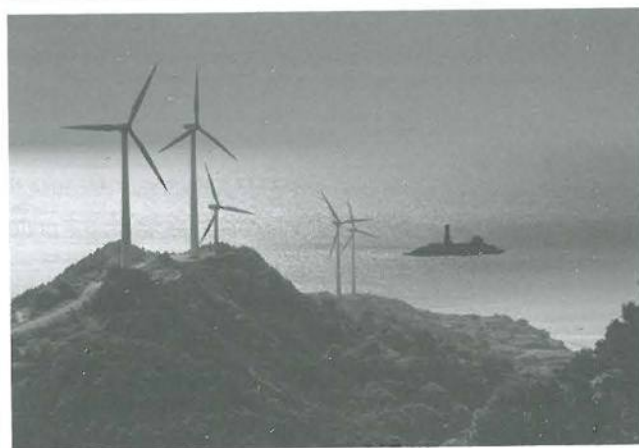
Heidi: ⁴____, but people will look at the picture first.

Andy: Hmm. You're ⁵____. We need bigger writing, above the picture. Like this ... What do you think?

Heidi: I'm not ⁶____ it's better. I've got a different idea. We have a sad looking, dark Earth and it's dreaming and the happy face is its dream. Like this ... Do you like it?

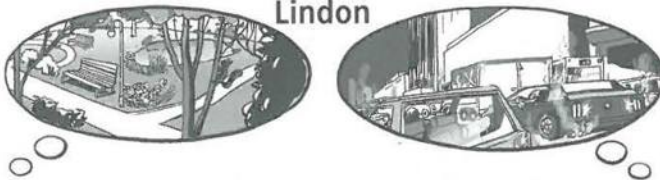
Andy: ⁷____! Yes, I ⁸____ with you. It's great.

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|
| 1 A sure | B honest | C right |
| 2 A say | B agree | C mean |
| 3 A disagree | B don't | C 'm not sure |
| 4 A Maybe | B Exactly | C To be honest |
| 5 A right | B agree | C honest |
| 6 A agree | B honest | C sure |
| 7 A Absolutely | B Agree | C Perhaps |
| 8 A disagree | B think | C agree |



8.7 Writing

Expressing opinion, presenting arguments



London

- 1 Write numbers 1–5 next to paragraphs A–E to put the text in the correct order.

The Lindon Observer
What's wrong with our town?

Your chance to send your ideas about how to improve Lindon.

Ray, Aged 16

A ☐ Also, there is a lot to do. We have good shops, cafés and restaurants. There is a cinema, a theatre and an art gallery. I go to a very good sports centre once a week. I know there aren't any concerts here and some teenagers say it's boring but I disagree.

B ☐ People always think their town should be better but I don't think anyone is really unhappy here. In my view, it's simply impossible!

C ☐ I realise that people may disagree with me, but I think our town is a nice place to live and I'm going to try to explain why.

D ☐ Finally, the countryside outside the town is beautiful. You can swim in the lakes, walk in the forests and, in the winter, you can go skiing in the mountains just 50km away.

E ☐ Firstly, it's safe. The people are friendly and there aren't any real problems here. I can go out at night and I don't have to worry. The schools are excellent and the park is very pleasant.

- 2 Complete the text with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

addition all finally first firstly
opinion secondly seems think view

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 3 You read this online post.

Is Lindon a good place for teenagers to live? How can we improve it? Leave your comments below.

Write your comments in about 100 words, giving and supporting your opinions and offering suggestions.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing. Can you tick (✓) everything on this list?

In my blog post:

- ☐ I have included a short introduction expressing my opinion.
- ☐ I have used phrases such as *In my opinion/view, It seems to me*, etc. to express my opinion.
- ☐ I have given arguments to justify my opinion.
- ☐ I have presented arguments using phrases such as *First of all, In addition, Finally*, etc.
- ☐ I have paraphrased my opinion at the end.
- ☐ I have used contractions (e.g. *I'm / aren't / that's*).
- ☐ I have checked my spelling.
- ☐ I have written 100 words.
- ☐ My post is neat and clear.

The Lindon Observer
What's wrong with our town?

Your chance to send your ideas about how to improve Lindon.

Lucy, Aged 17

In my opinion, our town centre is unattractive because there are so many cars. Why is this a problem?

1 of 2 the air is polluted. I can taste the pollution when I go to the town centre. The air is cleaner in bigger cities which are car free.

3 it is dangerous. The cars go very fast and there aren't many places to cross the road. In 4 the old buildings are always dirty and it costs a lot of money to clean them.

5 tourists enjoy walking around quiet, clean towns. It 6 to me that we don't get many tourists, because they don't like the town centre. It isn't a nice place to visit.

I understand that people need transport but I think cycle paths, buses and trams are more environmentally friendly than cars.

8.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 Read the article. Choose the best word (A, B or C) for each space.

How about a staycation this year?

Every January we start to think ⁰ _____ where we want to go on holiday in the summer. Most people today have ¹ _____ to other countries on holiday. It's a good way to ² _____ a new language and also to visit different cities. We can learn about different cultures and see a lot of beautiful places. However, ³ _____ we really know much about our own country?

Just think about it for a moment. How ⁴ _____ lovely places in your country have you not visited ⁵ _____? I'm sure there are lots! Perhaps you've ⁶ _____ pictures of mountains, hills and other places of natural beauty but have you been there? We spend a lot of money ⁷ _____ to far-off countries but maybe we ⁸ _____ learn more about the attractions closer to home first. Why not have a staycation this year!

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------|
| 0 A for | B about | C on |
| 1 A gone | B visited | C been |
| 2 A practise | B experience | C progress |
| 3 A does | B do | C did |
| 4 A much | B long | C many |
| 5 A just | B yet | C ever |
| 6 A seeing | B saw | C seen |
| 7 A travelling | B travelled | C travel |
| 8 A need | B should | C have |

TIPS

- 1 Which participle do we use in the Present Perfect to mean *go and return*?
- 4 The noun following the gap is plural and countable.
- 8 You need a word that is followed directly by the infinitive without *to*.

Open cloze

2 Complete the blog. Write ONE word for each gap.

I've just come back from a wonderful holiday ¹ _____ Thailand. We stayed in ² _____ three-star hotel near the beach and we visited lots of places ³ _____ car and bus. One day we ⁴ _____ to a turtle hatchery! That's a place where they take turtle eggs and keep ⁵ _____ until the babies come out. Then they look ⁶ _____ the little turtles ⁷ _____ a few days and protect them as they go across the beach to ⁸ _____ sea. If they ⁹ _____ do this, people steal the eggs ¹⁰ _____ sell or for food. It's a terrible problem. I hope they save the turtles!

TIPS

- 1 Which preposition do we use with a country?
- 3 When we talk about travelling what goes before *car, bus, train*, etc.?
- 5 You need a pronoun that refers back to *eggs*.

8.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick (✓) the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions
 😞😞 = I do not understand

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
8.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about wildlife and the countryside.					Students' Book pp. 96–97 Word Store p. 17 Workbook pp. 92–93
8.2	Grammar	I can use <i>will</i> to talk about the future and predict future events.					Students' Book p. 98 Workbook p. 94
8.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in a weather forecast.					Students' Book p. 99 Workbook p. 95
8.4	Reading	I can find specific detail in short texts.					Students' Book pp. 100–101 Workbook pp. 96–97
8.5	Grammar	I can use <i>be going to</i> to talk about plans.					Students' Book p. 102 Workbook p. 98
8.6	Speaking	I can agree and disagree in a discussion and express my opinion.					Students' Book p. 103 Workbook p. 99
8.7	Writing	I can express my opinion in writing with reasons and explanations.					Students' Book pp. 104–105 Workbook p. 100

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

8.10 Self-check

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 0 some / we / time / beautiful / taking / spent / photos / of / a / waterfall.
We spent some time taking photos of a beautiful waterfall.
- 1 saw / of / a / family / in / the / we / rainforest / gorillas

- 2 a / went / along / kayaking / river / dangerous / we

- 3 reef / there / a / trip / was / a / coral / to / boat

- 4 green / the / was / a / valley / town / in

- 5 the / snow / are / to / see / leopards / in / snow / difficult

/5

2 Complete the words with one letter in each gap.

Hi Monica,

Wow! What an amazing holiday! We are by the sea. It's quite ⁰windy but warm. The sky is blue all the time. I don't think I've seen a ¹c d at all. We have spent a lot of time looking at wildlife. My sister loved the colourful ²b s which sometimes flew onto her fingers. We've also been on a boat trip to look at the ³w s that swim in the sea here. They were really big! I was quite worried when they came close to the boat! Dad wanted to take a helicopter ride to an island about 20km away but, surprisingly, it was very ⁴f y that morning. The pilot couldn't see more than 50 metres in front of him and it was ⁵d s to fly. I'm quite glad – I hate flying! I'll tell you more when I see you.
 Abigail

/5

3 Match the beginnings 1–5 to the correct endings a–h. There are three extra endings.

- 0 The biggest problem facing many animals is not illegal ☒ **i**
- 1 After they built the new road, air ☐
- 2 Every time we have cold weather, my friends ask me what happened to global ☐
- 3 I think more and more people are now worried by climate ☐
- 4 Cars and motorbikes are dirty and they make a lot of ☐
- 5 This forest is very large because people can't cut down ☐
- a warming. f noise.
 b the water. g pollution got much worse.
 c trees here. h the bush.
 d environment. i hunting but the loss
 e change. of habitats.

/5

4 Put the words in the correct order.

- 0 will / planes / 2050? / fast / in / how / travel
How fast will planes travel in 2050?
- 1 not / summer. / going / plane / travel / I'm / this / to / by

- 2 going / a job / year? / is / to / next / Miranda / get

- 3 it / sunny / weekend? / will / be / this

- 4 going / project / to / our / tonight. / we're / finish

- 5 won't / cars / 2049. / there / any / in / be

/5

5 Complete the text with the verbs from the box in the correct future forms.

going/join not/going/drive not/going/join
 they/live ~~not/be~~ you/going/do

There's an island in the middle of the Indian Ocean. It's very beautiful but, in the near future, it ⁰won't be here. It will be under the sea. The people will lose their homes. Where ¹_____?

I read about the island in a magazine. It was a sad story and I want to do something to change the world. So, I' ²_____ an environmental group. My parents are also interested. They ³_____ the group but they are going to change the things they do. For example, my dad ⁴_____ to work, he's going to cycle.

I'm not sure we can save the island but ... maybe. What ⁵_____ to help? Please, let us know your ideas.

/5

6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words from the box. There are two extra words.

be character go legal
 nature picture pollute will

- 0 We aren't going to stay in a hotel. We want to stay somewhere cheaper.
- 1 There is still a lot of _____ hunting of elephants in Africa. Why can't governments stop it?
- 2 I love hammerhead sharks with their _____, strange-looking heads.
- 3 I'm sure you _____ be bored. There is always a lot to do in Brighton, even when the weather is bad.
- 4 We stayed in a _____ little village near the sea. It was almost perfect.
- 5 When are you _____ to book the flights? Please, don't forget.

/5

Total /30

EXAM STRATEGIES

Focus gives practice of the exam tasks you can find in upper secondary school leaving exams, and international exams. There are exercises to help you prepare for all parts of a typical exam – Listening, Reading, Grammar /Use of English, Speaking and Writing. In this introduction you will find some useful tips to help you do different types of exam tasks.

Listening comprehension

General guidelines

Do

- Before listening to a recording, read the instructions and the statements/questions in the task carefully. Try to think about what kind of information you're going to hear.
- When listening for the first time, look at the statements/questions in the task again and note down your answers.
- Before listening to the recording the second time, read all the questions again, especially those you didn't answer the first time. Note down your new answers and check your answers from the first listening.

Don't

- Don't worry if you don't understand some words. You don't need to understand all of the recording to do the task.
- If you don't understand part of the text at first, don't give up listening! Remember, you will hear it again.
- Don't spend too much time on the questions that you don't know how to answer. You can come back to them later. Move on to the next question.
- Do not leave any questions unanswered. If you're not sure, have a guess!

Multiple-choice tasks

- Remember that the questions in the task usually come in the same order as the information in the recording.
- If you have picture options, look at the pictures and questions very carefully to check that you understand what the pictures show. This will give you an idea of what sort of information to listen for.
- When listening to the recording for the first time, note down your own answers to the questions. Then check the options and see if any are the same as your answers.
- Be careful of the answers which sound or look very similar to the information in the recording. They are often wrong. Something related to each option will be in the recording but only one option will answer the question correctly.
- With text options for multiple-choice questions, the wording of the correct answer will not be exactly the same as in the recording. The correct answer will be expressed in different words.
- If you're not sure which option is correct, cross out the ones you know are wrong. Sometimes you can find the answer this way.

Note completion

- You may need to listen for information to complete some sentences or notes. Usually you will need one or two words. You will definitely hear the words you need to write in the recording. Sometimes the answer will be a name or a number.

- If you need to write a common word, you need to spell it correctly. Sometimes a name that you need will be spelled for you in the recording. Listen carefully for this.
- Read the notes you need to complete carefully before you hear the recording for the first time so that you have an idea of what the recording is about. Try to predict from the sentences what sort of words or information you need to listen for. You might be able to guess that you need to listen for a place, a name or a number, etc.
- Sometimes when you need to listen for a number, there could be another number mentioned before or afterwards but it will not be correct.

True/False tasks

- Remember that the questions are usually in the same order as the information in the recording.
- When deciding if a statement is true or false, make sure that you use the information in the recording, not your personal opinions or knowledge.
- Remember statements in exam questions don't usually use the same words as in the recording. Words and expressions from the recording are often rephrased.

Matching tasks

- Sometimes you need to match people from a list with things or activities. The people in the list will come in the same order as in the recording. The list to match them with will be in a different order.
- Remember that all the things or activities in the list to choose from will be mentioned in the recording. You have to listen carefully to choose the right ones for the right people.

Reading comprehension

General guidelines

Do

- Before you start reading the text, read the instructions for the task carefully. You will need to do different things in each task.
- Use the clues in the text to help you understand the context. The title and the photos or other visuals will help you understand what the main topic is, and the first sentences of paragraphs often tell you what the paragraph is about.
- Read the whole text before you try to answer the question(s). This gives you a good idea of the general meaning and helps you with longer texts, where you need to answer a question about a particular section or texts.
- Underline parts of the text which might help you answer the questions.

Don't

- Don't try to understand every word in a text. You don't need to know every single word to do the task. You can try to guess the meaning of unknown words using different techniques (e.g. using the context to guess the meaning, noticing similarities with words in your own language).
- Do not leave any questions unanswered. If you are not sure, guess!

EXAM STRATEGIES

- Don't spend too much time on any one particular task. Some tasks might be easier for you than others and you can get more marks by doing them.

Multiple-choice tasks

- With longer texts, decide which sections of the text have the answers to the questions.
- Focus on the detail of a paragraph or a sentence. An incorrect answer might only be different from the correct one in a detail such as the tense used for a verb.
- Remember the words in the correct option will not be the same as those in the text. They will be rephrased.

Completing conversations

- You may need to choose a reply to match a comment or an answer. Read the comment or question first and think about what sort of reply you might give. Then compare your answer with the options. Choose the one that is nearest your idea.
- Sometimes you need to complete a conversation by choosing different sentences from a list. Always read the conversation through carefully first so that you understand the main idea. Then look at the list.
- Remember to look at the sentences before and after the gap you need to fill. Your sentence must make sense and fit grammatically in the conversation.
- There are often words in the options to help you choose the right one. Look for words like 'it' or 'them' that refer back to the sentence that came before in the conversation.

True/False/Doesn't say tasks

- Remember that the questions are usually in the same order as the information in the text.
- When deciding if a statement is true, false or there is not enough information to say either way, make sure that you use the information in the text, not your personal opinions or knowledge.
- Remember statements in exam questions don't usually use the same words as in the text. Words and expressions from the text are often rephrased.

Matching tasks

- You might need to match notices with what they say. Start by reading the notices and try to understand them. Then look at the meanings one by one.
- There may be words that you don't understand but the main meaning of the notices will be clear.
- Remember that important information will be rephrased.
- If you need to match descriptions of people to different texts, start by reading the descriptions and underline important information. Then do the same with the texts.
- Don't decide too quickly if you see one word that matches. Read the texts carefully to check if it's really correct.

Grammar/Use of English

General guidelines

Do

- Before you start reading a text or questions, read the instructions for the task carefully.

- When a text has a title, read it carefully as this can help you predict the main idea of the text.
- Where there are gaps in the text, read the whole of the text without worrying about the gaps to get the general idea of the text.
- There will be an example answer for each task. Make sure you look at this carefully as this will help you understand what you need to do.

Don't

- Don't try to understand every word in a text. You don't need to know every single word to do the task. You can try to guess the meaning of unknown words using different techniques (e.g. guessing from the context or the grammatical form, noticing similarities with words in your native language).
- Do not leave any questions unanswered. If you are not sure, guess!
- Don't spend too much time on any one particular task. Remember that you should try to do all of the tasks.

Gapped sentences or texts

- Read the text or sentences first to have an idea what each of its parts is about. Try to understand as much as you can while ignoring the gaps.
- Sometimes there will be words to choose from. Sometimes you might have to think of the words yourself.
- Different types of words are tested in this exam task. For example, you may need to choose or think of the correct verb form, linker or article. When there is a choice, you might have to choose between words which have similar meanings.
- Read the gap-fill options carefully before deciding which one to choose.
- When deciding which options to use to complete the gaps, look at the words in the sentences or text before and after the gaps. These will give you clues about which option is correct (e.g. look for linkers, pronouns, prepositions, articles, etc.)
- Remember that the word you choose must fit grammatically into the sentence and must also make sense in the context of the sentence or the text.
- When you've finished, always read the text or sentence again to check it makes sense.

Writing

General guidelines

At this level you may need to complete some notes after reading some information and write a short email, postcard or message. There may be an email you need to reply to and some points to include in your answer.

When writing emails, postcards, etc., remember to use the right register and style. To help you do this there is a reference section, *Function Phrase Bank, Writing*, in this Workbook (see pp 106–107).

Do

- Read the question carefully so that you understand what you need to do.

- Answer all the questions.
- When you complete notes, make sure you copy the words correctly – spelling is important.
- When you write a message or email, remember to use linkers to join sentences and to divide your work into paragraphs if necessary.
- Start and finish your email or message with appropriate opening and closing expressions.
- Always read your text when you finish and check your grammar and spelling.

Don't

- Don't write too much or too little – there is usually a specific number of words required.
- Don't repeat the same information or words. Use a variety of vocabulary and a range of grammatical structures if you can.

Speaking

General guidelines

The section provided in this Workbook, *Function Phrase Bank, Speaking* (see pp 108–109), plus the *Vocabulary Bank* and related practice exercises (see pp 109–127), will help you prepare for the speaking tasks.

Do

- Listen carefully to the examiner's questions.
- If you are not sure whether you have understood what they have said, ask them to repeat the question.
- If you need more time to decide what to say, ask the examiner to repeat the question, and then repeat or paraphrase it, and use "filler" phrases to give you time to think (e.g. *Let me think ...*, *It's difficult to say ...*).
- Make sure you remember that your partner needs to speak as much as you do!
- If you are talking to your partner in the test, ask for their opinions, don't just take turns to speak.
- Try to keep speaking rather than finish your role play, discussion or talk early. It is better to be interrupted because you're talking too much than to say too little.

Don't

- Don't ask the examiner to explain something. He/she can only repeat an instruction.
- Don't worry if you can't remember a word. Try to find another way to say what you mean.
- Don't prevent your partner from speaking by dominating the conversation.
- Don't worry if the examiner stops you – he/she has a time limit for each part of the test.

Apologising

Informal phrases

I'm really sorry (that) ...
Sorry for any trouble.
Sorry I didn't write earlier, but I ...

Neutral phrases

I'm writing to tell you how sorry I am to ... (about) ...

Closing formulas

Informal phrases

Best wishes
Bye for now/See you!
Love/Take care!/All the best

Neutral phrases

Yours sincerely
Regards

Encouraging participation

Come on, don't be afraid/it's not difficult/it's easy!
Why don't you come and meet interesting people/see great things?
Come and tell us what you think..
Come and have fun!
Don't miss it!

Ending a letter/email

Informal phrases

It was good to hear from you.
Email me soon.
Bye for now.
Say hello to ...
Give my love/my regards to (everyone at home).
Have a nice (trip).
See you (soon/in the summer).
Write soon.
Keep in touch!

Neutral phrases

I look forward to hearing from you/your reply ...
I hope to hear from you soon.

Expressing opinions

I believe/think/feel (that) ...
I really believe ...
In my opinion/view, ...
It seems/appears to me (that) ...
My opinion is that ...

Agreeing with opinions

I (completely) agree that/with ...
That's fine with me.
I think so too.

Disagreeing with opinions

I disagree that/with .../I don't agree that/with ...
I am totally against
I see your point of view but ...
I'm afraid I can't agree with
I don't think it's the best solution

FUNCTION PHRASE BANK, WRITING

Expressing preferences

I really enjoy/like/love ... because ...
I prefer ... to ...
I'd like to .../I hope to ...
... is great because ...
I don't like/I can't stand/I really hate ...
It's not really my thing.

Giving advice

You should ...
Why don't you ...?

Giving good and bad news

Guess what!
I heard that ...
Paul has passed the driving exam!
Unfortunately, ...
I've got some good news.
I'm afraid I've got some bad news.

Responding to good and bad news

You're joking!
That's good/great/fantastic news!
That's awful/terrible!
I'm really sorry to hear that.
Congratulations!

Introduction

It was good to hear from you.
I hope you're doing well/you're fine/you're OK.
How are you (doing)?
I'm writing to tell you ...
Thanks for your letter/email.
I wanted to tell you about ...
I just wanted to ask/remind/thank you ...

Inviting

I'd like to invite you to ...
I'd like you to come ...
Would you come to ...?
I'm writing to invite you to (Brighton/my party).
I hope you can join us/make it.
If you want, you can bring a friend.
Join us today!
Come and meet me ...
Why don't you come ...?

Maintaining contact

Drop me a line sometime.
I hope to hear from you soon.
Give me a call later.
Let me know if you can make it or not.
I was glad to hear about ...
Let me know as soon as possible.

Making requests

Informal phrases

Can you ..., please?/Could you ...?
Let me know if you can (come).
Could you tell me ...?
Could you do me a favour?
Could you help me?

Neutral phrases

Would it be possible for you to ...?
I'd be grateful if you could ...
I'm writing to ask for your help/advice ...

Making suggestions

I think I/you/we should ...
Perhaps I/you/we could ...
What do you think about ...?
What about ...? / How about ...?
How do you feel about ...?
Would you like me to ...?
Why don't we (go) ...?
Let's go to ...

Accepting suggestions

That sounds fantastic!
I'd love to go.

Refusing suggestions

It doesn't sound very good.
I'm sorry but I can't join you.
I'm not really into ...

Starting a letter/email

Informal phrases

Dear Margaret,
Hi Anne,

Neutral phrases

Dear Mr and Mrs Edwards,
Dear Ms Brennan,

Telling a story

It all happened some time ago.
It was three years ago.
First, ...
Then, ...
Finally, ...
Suddenly, ...
Unfortunately, ...
Fortunately, ...

Thanking

Informal phrases

Thank you for your letter/email.
I'm writing to thank you for ...
Thank you so much.
It was so/really/very kind of you to ...

Neutral phrases

Thank you for sending it back to me.
I am really grateful for your help..
It's very kind of you..
Thank you for doing me a favour.

FUNCTION PHRASE BANK, SPEAKING

Unit 1

Preferences

Do you like films/reading?
What kind of (music/books/films) do you like?
Who's your favourite (singer/writer)?
What's your favourite (sport)?
What do you think of ...?
What about you?
I (really) like/love ...
I like ... a lot.
My favourite (actor/writer) is ...
(I think) He/She/It's good/great/awesome/brilliant.
I don't like ... (very much).
I hate/can't stand ...
(I think) He/She/It's terrible/awful/rubbish.
He/She/It's OK, but I prefer ...

Unit 2

Ordering food

Waiter / waitress / server says

Are you ready to order?
What would you like to drink?
Large or small?
Anything else?
It's ... (+ price)
Here you are.
Enjoy your meal.

Customer says

I'd like a/an/some .../Can I have a/an/some ...?
No, thanks. That's it.
How much is it?

Unit 3

Describing a photo

Who? Where? What are they doing?
The photo shows (a person/people) in a (place).
In the photo there is/there are (a person/people) in a (place).
He/She is .../They are ... + (eat)-ing.

Details of the picture

In the background ...
We can also see ...
He/She's wearing ...

What you think

Perhaps .../Maybe ...
I think he/she is .../they are ...

Unit 4

Shopping for clothes

Shop assistant says

Can I help you?
The changing rooms are over there.
What size are you?
How about (this pair/these)?/What about this one?
Do you want slim fit or loose fit jeans?

Would you like to try it/them on?
They're the fashion this year.

Customer says

Excuse me, could you help me, please?
I'm looking for a new pair of jeans.
They're exactly what I'm looking for/I want/need.
I'm a (size) 30.
Have you got this T-shirt in small/medium/large?
Have you got these in a different colour/black?
It's not really what I want.
Where are the changing rooms?

Unit 5

Organising a trip

Asking for information

I'd like some information.
What are the opening times?
How much does it cost to get in?
How much are the tickets? / How much is a (family) ticket?
Can I book online? / Are there any guided tours?
Is there an app?
Where is the (park/museum/attraction) exactly?
Thanks very much.

Giving information

Can I help you?
What would you like to know?
Tickets are (£10) for adults and (£5) for children.
Children under (5) are free.
There are also discounts for groups.
A family ticket costs (£20).
The (museum/park) opens at (9 a.m.) and closes at (5 p.m.).
It's in (Green Street).
You're welcome.

Unit 6

Asking for and giving advice

Asking for advice

What should I do/eat/wear?
Should I start jogging in the park?

Giving advice

You (really) should do some kind of sport regularly.
It's important to spend some time outdoors.
Make sure you always do some stretching exercises.
You should also eat fresh fruit and vegetables.
You (really) shouldn't stay up all night.

Unit 7

Asking for and giving directions

Asking for directions

Excuse me, can you tell me the way to ...?
How do I get to ...?
Excuse me, where's the (post office)?

Giving directions

Go out of ... and turn left/right.
Turn left/right into (High Street).
Walk along the (road)/past the (post office) on your left/right.
Take/It's the first/second/third turning on the left/right.
Go straight on.
Go across the (road).
The (museum) is opposite the (shop).
The (theatre) is on the left/right.
It's between the (station) and the (hotel).
It's next door.
It's on the corner of (Shakespeare Road) and (King's Road).

Unit 8

Agreeing and disagreeing

Agreeing

I think so (too).
(Yes,) I agree.
Exactly/Absolutely.
That's/You're right.

Agreeing in part/Agreeing and disagreeing

Perhaps/Maybe but ...
Maybe you're right ...
I see what you mean but ...
You have a point but ...

Disagreeing

I'm not sure.
I don't think so.
I disagree.
To be honest, I don't think it makes much sense.

Translate the words and phrases.

People

Personal information

adult _____
age _____
at the age of (ten) _____
be born _____
birthday _____
identity card _____
middle-aged _____
old _____
person _____
young _____

Nationality

American _____
Argentinian _____
Australian _____
Brazilian _____
British _____
Canadian _____
Chinese _____
English _____
French _____
German _____
Greek _____
Hungarian _____
Irish _____
Japanese _____
Italian _____
Mexican _____
Polish _____
Portuguese _____
Russian _____
Scottish _____
Spanish _____
Swedish _____
Swiss _____
Czech _____
Turkish _____
Welsh _____
Vietnamese _____

Appearance

Hair colour
black _____
blond _____
brown _____
dark _____
fair _____
grey _____
red _____

VOCABULARY BANK

Hair type

curly _____
straight _____
wavy _____

Hair length

bald _____
long _____
medium-length _____

Eye colour

blue _____
brown _____
green _____
grey _____

Height

short _____
tall _____

Build and looks

attractive/good-looking _____
fat _____
fit _____
flexible _____
pretty _____
slim _____
sporty _____
thin _____
ugly _____
well-built _____

Clothes and accessories

beads _____
boots _____
coat _____
dress _____
feathers _____
hat _____
jacket _____
jeans/pair of jeans _____
jumper _____
make-up _____
pocket _____
pyjamas _____
scarf _____
shirt _____
shoes _____
skirt _____
socks _____
sunglasses _____
suit _____
T-shirt _____
tattoo _____
tie _____
top _____

tracksuit _____
trainers _____
trousers _____
watch _____

wedding dress _____
wig _____

Adjectives describing style

casual _____
comfortable _____
crazy/mad _____
fashionable _____
formal _____
original _____
outrageous _____
smart _____
stylish _____
well-designed _____

Personality and emotions

be afraid/scared of sth _____
ambitious _____
ambition _____
believe in yourself _____
boring _____
broken-hearted _____
busy _____
calm _____
clever/intelligent _____
confident _____
creative _____
energetic _____
fear of sb/sth _____
fun _____
funny _____
generous _____
happy _____
interesting _____
kind _____
laugh _____
naive _____
nervous _____
negative _____
pleased _____
positive _____
be proud of sb/sth _____
relaxed _____
sense of humour _____
serious _____
shy _____
smile _____
sociable _____
stupid _____
successful _____
talented _____

tell jokes _____
tolerant _____
unkind _____
unsociable _____
untidy _____
worried _____

Likes and dislikes

can't stand _____
care about sth _____
be crazy about sth _____
enjoy sth/have fun in sth _____
hate/can't stand (Twitter/rollerblading) _____
be interested in sth _____
be into sth _____
like (films/reading) _____
love (weekends/cooking) _____
prefer (rap/to relax at home) _____

Home

Places where we live

city _____
countryside _____
flat _____
house _____
town _____
village _____

Rooms in a house

bathroom _____
bedroom _____
kitchen _____
living room _____
room _____
upstairs _____

Furniture and equipment

armchair _____
bath _____
beanbag _____
bed _____
candle _____
carpet _____
chair _____
cooker _____
cupboard _____
desk _____
dishwasher _____
door _____
fridge _____
key _____
lamp _____

VOCABULARY BANK

poster _____
 roof _____
 shower _____
 sink _____
 sofa _____
 stairs _____
 table _____
 toilet _____
 wall _____
 wardrobe _____
 water pipe _____
 window _____

Describing a house – prepositions of place

behind _____
 between _____
 in _____
 in front of _____
 next to _____
 on _____
 opposite _____
 over _____
 under _____

Other

buy your first flat/house/home _____

 flowerbed _____
 leave home _____
 move (to) _____
 neighbour _____

School

School subjects

Biology _____
 Chemistry _____
 Geography _____
 English _____
 History _____
 IT (Information Technology) _____

 Marine Biology _____
 Maths _____
 PE (Physical Education) _____

 Physics _____
 Science _____

Types of schools

boys' school _____
 girls' school _____
 kindergarten _____
 middle school _____
 mixed school _____

nursery school _____
 primary school _____
 private school _____
 secondary school _____
 single-sex school _____
 state school _____

Higher education

academy _____
 technical college _____
 university _____

Places at the school

canteen _____
 (well-equipped/comfortable) classroom _____

 corridor _____
 gym _____
 hall _____
 library _____
 playground _____
 science lab _____
 sports field _____
 staff room _____

Classroom objects

blackboard _____
 calculator _____
 coursebook _____
 desk _____
 (special) equipment _____
 IWB (interactive whiteboard) _____

People at school

form teacher _____
 head teacher _____
 professor _____
 pupil _____
 secondary school student _____

 teacher _____
 university student _____

School activities

acting _____
 club meeting _____
 compulsory activities _____
 end-of-year sports competition _____

 extra activities _____
 gap year programme _____

 outdoor activities _____
 sports team _____
 theatre group _____
 trials _____

volunteer programme/project _____

 workshop _____

Verbs and phrases about school

be good at (foreign languages) _____

 be in education _____
 be late/early/on time for lessons _____

 borrow a book from the library _____

 cheat in exams _____
 design a study programme _____

 do a course _____
 do experiments _____
 do extra activities _____
 do/play sport _____
 do your best _____
 do your homework _____
 do well/badly in the exam/test _____

 fail an exam _____
 get an education _____
 get a good/bad mark (for sth) _____

 get lost _____
 get the most from sth _____
 give a speech (about students' rights) _____

 go to university _____
 have a degree _____
 have a meeting _____
 improve _____
 learn a skill _____
 learn to drive _____
 leave school _____
 miss school/classes _____
 participate in sth _____
 pass an exam _____
 practise _____
 start school _____
 study a subject _____
 train to become (a vet) _____
 use a tablet/mobile phone (in class/ during lessons) _____

 wear a school uniform/an overall _____

Classroom language

alphabet _____
 ask/answer questions _____
 check _____
 choose (the correct answer) _____

VOCABULARY BANK

complete the table _____
 listen to the dialogue _____
 look at (the photos/the board) _____
 match (the words with opposite meaning) _____
 put (the words) in the correct order _____
 read the text _____
 repeat _____
 speak (in English) _____
 talk _____
 think of sth _____
 tick _____
 underline _____
 use a dictionary/pen/pencil _____
 work in pairs/groups of three _____
 write in your notebook _____

Work

Jobs

accountant _____
 actor/actress _____
 architect _____
 artist _____
 au pair _____
 author _____
 builder _____
 chef _____
 cook _____
 courier _____
 dentist _____
 doctor _____
 engineer _____
 factory worker _____
 farmer _____
 gardener _____
 guide _____
 hairdresser _____
 journalist _____
 lawyer _____
 mechanic _____
 nurse _____
 photographer _____
 plumber _____
 programmer _____
 receptionist _____
 scientist _____
 secretary _____
 shop assistant _____

soldier _____
 sports instructor _____
 taxi driver _____
 teacher _____
 vet _____
 waiter/waitress _____

People at work

apprentice _____
 boss _____
 colleague _____
 co-worker _____
 customer/client _____
 director _____
 employer _____
 guest _____
 manager _____
 owner of a business _____
 patient _____
 shopper _____
 staff _____
 worker _____

Workplaces

business _____
 café _____
 (international) company _____
 construction company _____
 factory _____
 holiday resort _____
 hospital _____
 hotel _____
 office _____
 school _____
 supermarket _____
 travel company _____

Types of jobs

dream job _____
 full-time job _____
 holiday job _____
 office job _____
 part-time job _____
 physical work _____
 weekend job _____

Job duties

ask people their opinion _____
 babysit _____
 build _____
 dig _____
 email sb/write/send an email to sb _____
 fill in questionnaires _____
 look after sb _____
 meet people _____

meeting _____
 order _____
 organise _____
 phone sb _____
 pick strawberries/apples _____

play with the kids _____
 prepare sth/for sth _____
 repair _____
 be responsible for sth/doing sth _____

sell _____
 send sth to sb _____
 serve customers _____
 sign _____
 teach (sb) sth/(sb) about sth/sb to do sth _____

test (products/beds/water slides/safety) _____

Employment

employ _____
 finish work at (5 p.m.) _____
 gain experience _____
 get your first job _____
 have a job (in one's family's business) _____

job interview _____
 learn practical skills _____

learn sth/about sth/to do sth _____

train for a job (as an apprentice) _____

work abroad _____
 work alone/in a team _____
 work as (a programmer/a teacher) _____

work for (a company) _____
 work from home _____
 work full-time/part-time _____
 work hard _____
 work (eight) hours a day _____

work in (a supermarket) _____
 work long hours _____
 work nine to five _____
 work outside _____
 work with people/children/adults/ numbers _____

work with your hands _____
 working day _____

VOCABULARY BANK

Adjectives to describe work and jobs

badly-paid _____
 boring _____
 demanding _____
 difficult _____
 easy _____
 exciting _____
 hard _____
 lazy _____
 scary _____
 unpleasant _____
 well-paid _____

Work and money

earn (thirty pounds) a day _____

 earn a good/high/low salary _____

 earn a lot of money as (a waiter) _____

 earn enough to pay for the rent _____

 earn money to pay for my studies _____

 make money _____

Family and social life

Family

aunt _____
 baby _____
 brother _____
 child/children _____
 cousin _____
 father/dad _____
 grandmother _____
 grandfather _____
 grandparents _____
 husband _____
 mother/mum _____
 parents _____
 sister _____
 son _____
 teenager _____
 twins _____
 uncle _____
 wife _____

Friends

best friend _____
 colleague _____
 friend _____
 mate _____

Relationships

do sb a favour _____
 fall in love _____
 get married _____
 give advice _____
 go on your first date _____
 wedding _____

Everyday life

be busy (with sth) _____
 be late for school _____
 clean the house/flat _____
 clean your teeth _____
 come/go back home from work/school _____

do homework _____
 do the shopping _____
 do the washing-up/wash the dishes _____

get ready for work _____
 go to bed (early) _____
 have a bath/a shower _____

have breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper _____

look after the children _____

make your bed _____
 pack your schoolbag _____
 start _____
 study _____
 take the dog for a walk _____

take/drive the child to school/to the playgroup _____

tidy your room _____
 wake up/get up (early) _____

wash the car _____
 work in the garden _____

Time expressions

at night _____
 at noon/at midnight/at one o'clock _____

at the weekend _____
 every day/Saturday/weekend _____

in the morning/afternoon/evening _____

on a typical weekend/school day _____

on Friday afternoon/Friday night _____

on Friday/Saturday _____

on Saturdays/Sundays _____
 on Sunday mornings _____
 on weekdays _____

Days of the week

Monday _____
 Tuesday _____
 Wednesday _____
 Thursday _____
 Friday _____
 Saturday _____
 Sunday _____

Free time

go for a swim/a walk _____
 go on holiday _____
 go on the Internet _____
 go out (with friends) _____
 go out for dinner _____
 go rollerblading/dancing _____

go shopping/to the shops _____

go to a party/concert _____

go to the park/cinema/gym/sports centre/youth club _____

hang out with friends _____

have a picnic _____
 have fun/a good time _____

listen to music _____
 play a musical instrument _____

play ball/chess/tennis/computer games _____

play together _____
 post photos on Facebook _____

read books/magazines/news websites _____

relax _____
 spend a lot of time alone/together/with my friends/with my grandparents _____

spend time at home/at school/at my grandparents' _____

stay at home _____
 take photographs/photos _____
 talk about books/films _____

visit friends/different places _____

VOCABULARY BANK

watch a film/a DVD/music videos on
YouTube/TV/the telly/sports on TV

write a blog

Parties

after-exams party
birthday party
bring-your-own party
celebrate
costume
dress up as sb/sth
fancy dress party
invitation
invite

Food

Fruit

apple
banana
orange
strawberry

Vegetables

carrot
mushroom
onion
potato
tomato

Dairy

(mozzarella) cheese
ice cream
milk

Meat and fish

chicken
ham
pork
tuna

Drinks

alcoholic drink
coffee
cola
juice
lemonade
tea
(mineral) water

Other products

basil
bread
cake
chocolate
cornflakes

crisps

egg

fat

flour

honey

ketchup

mayonnaise

oil

olive oil

rice

seafood

sugar

tomato sauce

Dishes

hamburger/burger

hot dog

Indian meal

omelette

pancake

pasta

pizza

salad

sandwich

sausage

sauce

soup

spaghetti

Meals

breakfast

(main) course

dessert

(two-/three-course) dinner

for breakfast/for dessert

lunch

lunch time

snack

tea

Preparing food

boil

chop

cook

fry (on both sides)

heat

(main) ingredient

make a snack

mix

mixture

pan

prepare

put sth on top of sth

recipe

slice

take out

try

Containers

a bag of (potatoes)

a bar of (chocolate)

a bottle of (ketchup)

a can of (lemonade)

a carton of (milk)

a cup of (flour)

a jar of (honey)

a loaf of (bread)

a packet of (crisps)

a tin of (tuna) (BrE)/a can of (tuna)
(AmE)

a tub of (ice cream)

Food adjectives

delicious

fantastic

favourite

fresh

grilled

healthy

hot/spicy

local

strong

sweet

traditional

typical

unhealthy

vegetarian

wild

yummy

Restaurants

burger bar

chef

choose

cook

cost

Enjoy your meal!

expensive

fast food

food festival

get a takeaway

go out for a meal

kebab bar

large/small

menu

order

oriental restaurant

pizza place

price

VOCABULARY BANK

pub _____
 serve _____
 server/waiter/waitress _____

Other

eat in front of the telly _____
 feed _____
 have _____
 hungry _____
 taste _____
 vegetarian _____

Shopping and services

Types of shops and services

bank _____
 bookshop _____
 chemist's _____
 clothes shop _____
 music shop _____
 post office _____
 supermarket _____
 travel agency/travel agent's _____

Buying and selling

cheap _____
 checkout _____
 choice _____
 close _____
 cost _____
 customer _____
 discount _____
 expensive _____
 free _____
 go shopping _____
 open _____
 opening times _____
 shelf/shelves _____
 shop assistant _____
 shop window _____
 shopper _____
 shopping basket _____
 trolley _____

Fashion

casual/original/smart dresser _____
 changing room _____
 design _____
 ecofashion label _____
 fit (well) _____
 inspire _____

look _____
 material _____
 model _____
 outfit _____
 quality _____
 slim/loose fit _____
 (small/medium/large/extra large) size _____

style icon _____
 try sth on _____
 wear _____

Travelling and tourism

Forms of transport

bike _____
 boat _____
 bus _____
 car _____
 coach _____
 ferry _____
 helicopter _____
 hot-air balloon _____
 moped _____
 motorbike/motorcycle _____
 plane _____
 ship _____
 tall ship _____
 taxi _____
 train _____
 tram _____
 underground/tube _____

Types of trips

activity holiday _____
 adventure holiday _____
 backpacking holiday _____
 beach holiday _____
 camping holiday/camping trip _____
 cycling trip _____
 excursion _____
 skiing holiday _____
 tour _____
 trip abroad _____
 working holiday _____

Planning a holiday

book: _____
 the accommodation _____
 a car _____
 an excursion _____
 a flight _____
 a holiday _____

a hotel _____
 a room _____
 a seat on the train/bus _____

a train/bus ticket _____
 the transport _____

book online _____
 brochure _____
 have a booking _____
 make the arrangements _____
 make/change a reservation/a booking _____

special/top offer _____
 travel agency/travel agent's _____

Accommodation

bed and breakfast (B&B) _____
 campsite _____
 check in _____
 guesthouse _____
 home stay _____
 (luxury/three-star) hotel _____
 reception desk _____
 staff _____
 stay in (a hotel)/at (a campsite) _____

youth hostel _____

On the journey

airport check-in desk _____
 arrive _____
 bumps in the road _____
 check in _____
 cycle _____
 drive _____
 family ticket _____
 flight _____
 fly _____
 get on/off (the train) _____
 give sb a lift _____
 go on foot _____
 hitch/hitchhike _____
 hitchhiking _____
 land _____
 make an announcement _____
 on time _____
 platform _____
 reach (a place) _____
 ride (a bike) _____
 road _____
 sail _____
 stopover _____
 street _____

VOCABULARY BANK

train station _____
 travel/go by (train/plane) _____
 travel round Europe _____
 waiting room _____
 wear a helmet _____

Holiday activities

be active _____
 climb _____
 cultural event _____
 eat at a restaurant _____
 eat local food _____
 education centre _____
 escape to the countryside _____
 experience (a place/white sand/clear water) _____
 explore _____
 go hang-gliding/paragliding _____
 go hiking _____
 go kayaking _____
 go mountain biking _____
 go to/visit museums _____
 guided tour _____
 museum tour _____
 relax (by the sea) _____
 ride a camel/an elephant _____
 rock climb/go climbing _____
 see/visit the sights _____
 travel round by (car) _____
 try different kinds of activities _____
 visit interesting places _____

People on holiday

climber _____
 guest _____
 guide _____
 hiker _____
 hitchhiker _____
 passenger _____
 tourist _____
 visitor _____

Places to visit

attraction _____
 beach _____
 castle _____
 desert _____
 island _____
 local market _____

local towns _____
 mountains _____
 museum _____
 palace _____
 port _____
 rainforest _____
 theatre _____
 (top) tourist sights _____
 town hall _____

Things to take on holiday

camera _____
 case _____
 cooking equipment _____
 guidebook _____
 luggage _____
 passport _____
 sleeping bag _____
 tent _____
 trailer _____
 visa _____
 warm clothes _____

Giving directions

along _____
 between _____
 follow the route _____
 get to ... _____
 go across the road _____
 next door _____
 next to sth _____
 on the corner _____
 on your right/left _____
 opposite _____
 straight on _____
 take the (second) turning on the (left) _____

tell sb the way to ... _____
 turn left/right into (High Street) _____

walk past sth _____

Accidents

bring sb down the mountain _____
 daring rescue _____
 death _____
 die _____
 disaster _____
 fall _____
 help _____
 hit _____
 rescue _____
 save sb's life _____
 shake _____

Culture

Art

artist _____
 arts festival _____
 draw _____
 paint _____
 photographer _____
 photography _____
 picture _____

Music

band _____
 dance class _____
 fantastic voice _____
 guitar lesson _____
 musician _____
 play the piano/the guitar/the violin _____

practise (the guitar) _____

record deal _____
 rock star _____
 sing _____
 singer _____
 studio _____
 write songs _____

Kinds of music

classical _____
 jazz _____
 pop _____
 rap _____
 reggae _____
 rock _____

Musical instruments

drums _____
 guitar _____
 piano _____
 violin _____

Literature and film

actor/actress _____
 author/writer _____
 comic _____
 fantasy _____
 film star _____
 movie/film _____
 read a lot _____
 science fiction _____
 true life films _____
 vampire stories _____

The media

advertise _____
 episode _____

VOCABULARY BANK

journalist _____
news show _____
telly _____
the news _____
women's magazine _____
write a blog _____

Sport

Sports

badminton _____
basketball _____
bungee jumping _____
croquet _____
cycling _____
diving _____
exercise _____
football _____
golf _____
hang-gliding _____
hockey _____
ice skating _____
jogging _____
karate _____
kayaking _____
kung fu _____
mountain biking _____
paragliding _____
rugby _____
running _____
sailing _____
skateboarding _____
skiing _____
snooker _____
snorkelling _____
swimming _____
table tennis/Ping-Pong _____
team _____
tennis _____
triathlon _____
volleyball _____
yoga _____
Zumba _____

Types of sport

individual sports _____
martial arts _____
Olympic sports _____
summer sports _____
team sports/games _____
water sports _____
winter sports _____

Sports equipment

ball _____
bicycle/bike _____

goal _____
helmet _____
paraglider _____
rope _____
running machine _____

Doing sport

bicycle race _____
career _____
challenge _____
coach a football team _____
competition _____
complete _____
cycle _____
do (yoga/karate) _____
final _____
finish line _____
first/second half _____
football club _____
get fit _____
go cycling/sailing _____
go hang-gliding/paragliding _____
go kayaking _____
go mountain biking _____
goal line _____
marathon _____
(tennis) match _____
the Olympics/Olympic Games _____

paraglide _____
the Paralympics _____
play (football/volleyball) _____
play for a team _____
practise _____
prize _____
result _____
ride a bike _____
roller-skate _____
run fast _____
score (ten points/a goal) _____
ski _____
speed _____
sponsor _____
sports event _____
swim _____
take part in (kung fu) competitions _____

take place _____
tournament _____
train _____
victory _____
the World Cup _____
win _____

win a gold/silver/bronze medal _____
win gold/bronze _____

Places to practise sport

gym _____
sports centre _____
sports field _____
stadium _____

People in sport

athlete _____
basketball player _____
champion _____
coach _____
competitor _____
cyclist _____
footballer/football player _____
gymnast _____
hockey player _____
instructor _____
jogger _____
professional sports person _____
runner _____
sailor _____
skier _____
swimmer _____
tennis player _____

Health

Parts of the body

arm _____
brain _____
ear _____
eye _____
eyebrows _____
eyelashes _____
face _____
foot/feet _____
forehead _____
hair _____
hand _____
head _____
leg _____
lips _____
mouth _____
neck _____
nose _____
tongue _____
tooth/teeth _____

Illnesses and treatment

break an arm/leg _____
dentist _____

VOCABULARY BANK

disabled _____
 doctor _____
 examine _____
 feel (terrible/better) _____
 feel dizzy _____
 headache _____
 health problem _____
 hormone _____
 hospital _____
 (serious) illness _____
 medical help _____
 nurse _____
 painful _____
 patient _____
 sick/ill _____
 sore _____
 treatment _____

Healthy lifestyle

diet (of sth) _____
 do (stretching) exercises _____
 get enough sleep _____
 give energy _____
 go to the gym _____
 grow _____
 have a healthy breakfast/meal _____
 have a healthy diet/eat well _____
 have a healthy lifestyle _____
 keep fit _____
 relax _____
 rest _____
 spend time outdoors _____
 stay up late/all night _____
 take regular breaks _____
 walk _____

Science and technology

Electronic equipment

CD player _____
 digital camera _____
 e-book reader _____
 gadget _____
 games console _____
 headphones _____
 memory stick _____
 mobile phone _____
 MP3 player _____

smartphone _____
 touch screen _____

Computers

computer game _____
 download an app _____
 laptop _____
 tablet _____
 website _____

Technology

discover _____
 experiment _____
 inventor _____
 robot _____
 scientist _____
 work _____

The natural world

Seasons

spring _____
 summer _____
 autumn (BrE)/fall (AmE) _____
 winter _____

Months

January _____
 February _____
 March _____
 April _____
 May _____
 June _____
 July _____
 August _____
 September _____
 October _____
 November _____
 December _____

Weather

clear _____
 clear sky _____
 cloud _____
 cloudy _____
 cold _____
 degree _____
 fog _____
 foggy _____
 hot _____
 rain _____
 rainy _____
 shower _____
 snow _____
 sun _____
 sunny _____
 sunshine _____

temperature _____
 thunder and lightning _____
 warm _____
 weather forecast _____
 wet _____
 wind _____
 windy _____

Animals

(polar) bear _____
 (sea) bird _____
 buffalo _____
 butterfly _____
 cat _____
 camel _____
 chimpanzee _____
 coral _____
 cow _____
 crocodile _____
 dog _____
 (forest) elephant _____
 fish _____
 giraffe _____
 gorilla _____
 Highland pony _____
 (snow) leopard _____
 lion _____
 monkey _____
 mosquito _____
 panda _____
 penguin _____
 peregrine falcon _____
 pig _____
 shark _____
 (sea) snail _____
 tiger _____
 (sea) turtle _____
 whale _____
 wolf _____

Plants

bamboo _____
 bush _____
 cereal _____
 flower _____
 grass _____
 rose _____
 tree _____

Landscape

beach _____
 continent _____
 coral reef _____
 countryside _____
 desert _____
 field _____
 (tropical) forest _____

VOCABULARY BANK

glacier _____
 hill _____
 ice falls _____
 ice pools/bridges _____
 island _____
 jungle _____
 mountain _____
 national park _____
 nature reserve _____
 ocean _____
 (subtropical) rainforest _____
 river _____
 rock _____
 sea _____
 valley _____
 waterfall/falls _____

Location

above sea level _____
 area _____
 cover _____
 high up _____
 (square) kilometre _____
 lie _____
 north/south/east/west _____
 northern/southern/eastern/western _____
 on the border (between) _____
 southernmost _____
 surrounded by sth _____
 undersea _____
 underwater _____
 (three kilometres) wide _____

Environmental problems and protection

air/water pollution _____
 climate change _____
 cut down trees _____
 danger _____
 dangerous _____
 destroy _____
 die out _____
 disappear _____
 disaster _____
 (nuclear) energy _____
 environmentally friendly _____
 flood _____
 global warming _____
 green _____
 grow _____
 habitat _____

harm the environment _____
 hunt _____
 illegal fishing/hunting _____
 litter/rubbish _____
 make noise _____
 melt _____
 oil _____
 plant trees _____
 pollute the air/water _____
 power station/power plant _____
 produce CO₂ _____
 protect the (natural) environment _____
 recycled _____
 recycling _____
 safe _____
 save energy/water _____
 sea ice _____
 solar power _____
 sort rubbish _____
 throw away _____
 turn off the water tap _____
 turn on/off the light/electrical devices _____
 use public transport _____
 (radioactive) waste _____
 waste energy/water _____
 water power _____
 wildlife _____
 wind farm _____
 world (water) crisis _____

Adjectives describing wonders of nature

amazing/incredible _____
 breathtaking _____
 characteristic _____
 famous (for sth) _____
 full of life _____
 lovely _____
 peaceful _____
 picturesque _____
 rare _____
 special _____
 unique (to an area) _____
 unusual _____
 wild _____

State and society

The state

agriculture _____
 army _____
 country _____
 education _____
 foreign _____
 government _____
 king _____
 local community _____
 princess _____
 protectorate _____
 province _____
 soldier _____
 state _____
 vote in an election _____
 war _____

Charity

charity _____
 foundation _____
 government programme _____
 non-profit organisation _____
 poor _____
 produce vegetables _____
 promote peace and friendship _____
 raise money _____
 support _____
 voluntary work _____
 volunteer _____

VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

PEOPLE

- 1 Complete the text with the correct opposites. First letters given.

OPPOSITES ATTRACT!

PEOPLE VERY OFTEN LOOK FOR PARTNERS WHO ARE NOT SIMILAR TO THEMSELVES, BUT VERY DIFFERENT!

You can see it in appearance and personality. Very attractive people often have ⁰ugly partners. Tall men often have ¹s wives, slim women usually prefer ²f men. If your hair is curly, your boyfriend will probably have ³s hair. ⁴E people choose calm partners. You can even be fashion opposites. Men who like wearing suits often choose women who wear ⁵c clothes. Sociable women have ⁶u husbands and ⁷s girls have confident boyfriends. It is a fact that many interesting men have ⁸b wives.

- 2 Choose three words or expressions from the box for each category.

adult Australian bald beads
be crazy about can't stand enjoy
generous medium-length middle-aged
pretty Portuguese scarf sense of humour
serious sunglasses Swiss tall
teenager tracksuit wavy well-built
well-designed wig

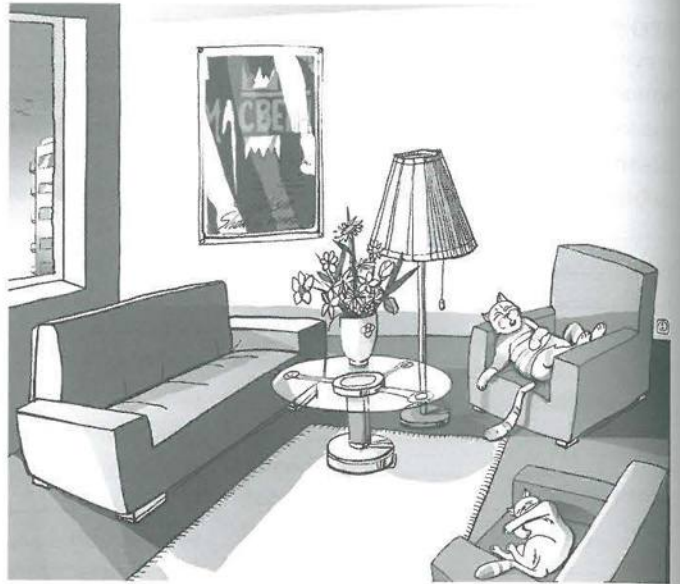
Accessories: beads / _____ / _____
Age: _____ / _____ / _____
Appearance: _____ / _____ / _____
Clothes: _____ / _____ / _____
Hair: _____ / _____ / _____
Nationalities: _____ / _____ / _____
Likes and dislikes: _____ / _____ / _____
Personality: _____ / _____ / _____

- 3 Put the words in the logical order.

0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 baby	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3 adult	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 child
1 <input type="checkbox"/> wavy	<input type="checkbox"/> straight	<input type="checkbox"/> curly
2 <input type="checkbox"/> black	<input type="checkbox"/> fair	<input type="checkbox"/> brown
3 <input type="checkbox"/> middle-aged	<input type="checkbox"/> young	<input type="checkbox"/> old
4 <input type="checkbox"/> long	<input type="checkbox"/> short	<input type="checkbox"/> medium-length
5 <input type="checkbox"/> broken-hearted	<input type="checkbox"/> happy	<input type="checkbox"/> relaxed

HOME

- 1 Look at the picture. Read the description and correct five mistakes.



The biggest room in our house is the kitchen. When we were young, we rode our bicycles in there. But now there is too much furniture. In the room, there is a cooker and a mirror on the wall. There is a small table behind the sofa. Our mum always puts some beautiful flowers there. There is a big wardrobe next to the table. There are two beds opposite the sofa. Our cats often sleep on them.

0 living room 2 _____ 4 _____
1 _____ 3 _____ 5 _____

- 2 Choose the odd one out.

0 armchair	beanbag	<u>lamp</u>	chair
1 behind	wardrobe	chair	table
2 city	sink	town	village
3 dishwasher	cooker	fridge	beanbag
4 between	over	neighbour	under
5 bedroom	shower	kitchen	bathroom
6 flat	roof	wall	window

- 3 Complete the diagram with the words from the box.

armchair bed cupboard shower
sink ~~sofa~~ toilet wardrobe

HOUSE

living room	<u>sofa</u>
bedroom	
bathroom	
kitchen	

VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

SCHOOL

1 Complete the quiz with the words in the box. Then answer the questions. Count the symbols and read the solution.

best difficult extra fail homework late leave listen marks
participate pass secondary study think university

What kind of student are you?

1 Tomorrow you are going to take an important exam.

- a You study a lot. ■
- b You don't do anything because you are sure you will _____ it. ★
- c You don't do anything because you know you will _____ it (or you simply forget about it). ◆

2 In primary school

- a you always did your _____ . ■
- b you were always _____ for school. ◆
- c you couldn't _____ because you were bored. ★

3 What do you like best?

- a school _____ activities – a theatre group or a sports club. ◆
- b taking exams and getting good _____ – you are the happiest when you get an A! ■
- c finding solutions to _____ problems. ★

4 You think

- a you will _____ school as soon as possible because it is a waste of time. ★
- b you will go to _____ . ■
- c _____ school is enough to be successful. ◆

5 You

- a never _____ in lessons – they are so boring. ★
- b _____ to teachers and take notes. ◆
- c always do your _____ ! ■

Which symbol appears most often in your answers?

- You are a typical 'A' student. Your notebooks are well organised and you get good marks. But don't forget about your friends and hobbies!
- ◆ You like school because your friends also go there. Sometimes you think lessons aren't very interesting. Remember that you can do well if you are doing something creative!
- ★ Good news! You might be a genius! You are so intelligent that you get bored at school. But remember that even a genius must have a basic education!

2 Look at the fragments of textbooks from different subjects. Write the names of the subjects.

0 Ethanol: C_2H_5OH is a substance which contains an OH group ... Chemistry

1 Bees, mosquitoes and butterflies are all insects. _____

2 We use the Past Simple to talk about actions and states in a finished period of time. _____

3 A triangle is a geometric figure with three sides and three angles, which can be the same or different. _____

4 Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. _____

5 The second driest area in the world is the Atacama Desert in Northern Chile. _____

6 Use your mouse to click on the 'new folder' button. _____

VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

WORK

1 Look at the pictures. Guess which people need these objects for their work. First letters are given.

0 builder

1 n _____

2 d _____

3 j _____

4 a _____

5 h _____

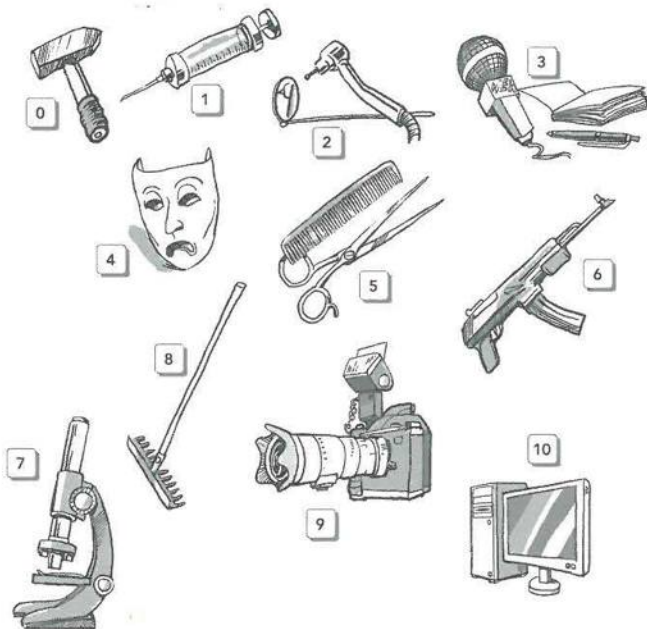
6 s _____

7 s _____

8 g _____

9 p _____

10 p _____



2 Complete the letter with the phrases from the box.

phones a high salary forms experience
some practical skills people English full time
working as long hours abroad

Dear Sara,

How are you doing?

I'm working as a receptionist in a big hotel in

Paris. Receptionists have to answer ¹ _____

and they often speak ² _____ at work.

Before I got the job I had to learn ³ _____

. Then I worked in a small hotel in my town to gain

⁴ _____. My job isn't always easy. I work

⁵ _____. I usually work

⁶ _____ and I sometimes finish work at

6.00 in the morning. I don't earn ⁷ _____

but I like my job very much. I meet

⁸ _____ every day and ask them to fill

in ⁹ _____. I'd like to work

¹⁰ _____ one day, perhaps in a holiday

resort in the Caribbean.

Write back soon.

Love,

Natalie

FAMILY AND SOCIAL LIFE

1 Put the words and expressions in the logical or most typical order.

0 3 in the evening

4 at night

1 in the morning

2 in the afternoon

1 ☐ be late for work

☐ go back home

☐ get ready for work

☐ have dinner

2 ☐ get married

☐ go on your first date

☐ fall in love

☐ have a baby

3 ☐ grandfather

☐ teenager

☐ child

☐ husband

4 ☐ on Monday mornings

☐ on Tuesdays

☐ on a typical weekend

☐ on Friday night

5 ☐ have a shower

☐ drive your children to school

☐ have lunch

☐ wake up

2 Complete the diagrams with the words from the box.

a bath a good time a musical instrument
a teenager busy chess computer games
homework late for school out with friends
shopping somebody a favour supper
the dishes to bed

1 play chess

2 go

3 do

4 be

5 have



VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

FOOD

1 Match words 1–8 with a–h to make phrases. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 0 a cup of | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a potatoes |
| 1 a packet of | <input type="checkbox"/> | b tuna |
| 2 a loaf of | <input type="checkbox"/> | c honey |
| 3 a jar of | <input type="checkbox"/> | d milk |
| 4 a bar of | <input type="checkbox"/> | e chocolate |
| 5 a tin of | <input type="checkbox"/> | f ketchup |
| 6 a bottle of | <input type="checkbox"/> | g bread |
| 7 a bag of | <input type="checkbox"/> | h crisps |
| 8 a carton of | <input type="checkbox"/> | i tea |

2 Choose the correct words.

Simple recipes/menus



True
ITALIAN
STYLE

Spaghetti

Ingredients:

- 3 large ⁰tomatoes / strawberries
- some meat
- some olive ¹flour / oil
- ²pasta / seafood
- mozzarella cheese
- ³basil / honey

Preparation:

⁴Heat / Chop some oil in a pan and ⁵fry / try the meat.

⁶Eat / Chop the tomatoes and ⁷mix / boil them with the meat.

⁸Boil / Heat the pasta until it's 'al dente'.

⁹Put / Mix the meat with the tomatoes on the pasta.

¹⁰Add / Taste some mozzarella cheese on top.

¹¹Boil / Serve with basil.

¹²Enjoy / Slice your meal!

SHOPPING AND SERVICES

1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

design model opening times shelves
shop assistant smart dresser style
supermarket to wear trolley

Shopping

Fashion

model

2 Complete the sentences. First letters are given.

- 0 Most supermarkets open at 8.00 in the morning.
- 1 Good q products are expensive.
- 2 Some shops c at 6.00 p.m. It's much too early for me.
- 3 When you go shopping you pay at the c.
- 4 It's a good idea to *t your shoes *o before you buy them.
- 5 Your shopping costs less if you get a d.
- 6 She's a very *o *d because she designs her own clothes.

3 Match words 1–5 to a–e to make compound nouns and then use them to complete the email below.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| 0 style | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a room |
| 1 shopping | <input type="checkbox"/> | b times |
| 2 changing | <input type="checkbox"/> | c fit |
| 3 loose | <input type="checkbox"/> | d size |
| 4 opening | <input type="checkbox"/> | e basket |
| 5 extra large | <input type="checkbox"/> | f icon |

Hi Sandra,

Would you like to go shopping for clothes with me?

I'm not exactly a ⁰ style icon so we could go to a hypermarket. Their ¹ are: Saturday 9.00 a.m. to 9.00 p.m. and Sunday 10.00 a.m. to 4.00 p.m. Are you free at 5.00 on Saturday? It's not going to take us long. We won't even need a ². I just want to buy a casual sweater and a pair of jeans. You know I love ³ clothes and I always get the ⁴. We won't have to go to a ⁵. I hope you can come.

Anna

VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

TRAVELLING AND TOURISM

1 Complete the postcards with the words from the boxes.

coach guide guidebook
interesting seats stay

Dear Tom,

It's lovely here in Italy! We were in Venice on Tuesday, then Florence and today we'll be in Rome. We always ⁰ stay in very good hotels, but there's a lot of travelling. The ¹ _____ is air-conditioned but the ² _____ are not very comfortable. Our ³ _____ is very nice and tells wonderful stories. We've seen a lot of ⁴ _____ places that I didn't read about in my ⁵ _____!

Love,
Granny

Tom Jones
14, Park Lane
London W1V3gJ
United Kingdom

bag campsite clothes
hostel island tent

Hi Tom!

The ⁶ _____ is beautiful - there's an old, dark forest and a wide stream with clear, mountain water. But probably it's not going to be the holiday of my dreams! The ⁷ _____ where we are staying is ugly. Today it's cold and it's raining all the time, and we're sitting in our wet ⁸ _____. My sleeping ⁹ _____ is wet too and yesterday somebody stole my ¹⁰ _____, so I think I'll catch a cold if we don't find a youth ¹¹ _____ tomorrow. I hope you are not so unlucky ...

See you soon.
David

Tom Jones
14, Park Lane
London W1V3gJ
United Kingdom

2 Choose the correct answers A, B or C.

- 0 Which of these don't you find at the airport?
A a check-in desk. B a plane.
C a ferry.
- 1 You can't go cycling
A on water. B around Europe.
C in the mountains.
- 2 You practise kayaking
A in the mountains. B on water.
C in a museum.
- 3 What do you do when you are a hitchhiker?
A You drive your own car. B You travel by coach.
C You get free transport from other drivers.
- 4 You can't spend the night at a
A campsite. B youth hostel.
C reception desk.

CULTURE

1 Put a tick by the true sentences and a cross by the false ones. Correct the false information.

- 0 A guitar is a musical instrument. ☒
- 00 A news show is a type of book. ☒
it is a type of TV programme.
- 1 Musicians often get record contracts. ☐
- 2 Reggae is a type of film. ☐
- 3 Fantasy is a type of true life film. ☐
- 4 Writers draw pictures. ☐
- 5 Singers often have fantastic voices. ☐
- 6 Photographers play musical instruments. ☐
- 7 There are lots of pictures in a comic. ☐
- 8 You can read the drums. ☐

2 Match descriptions 1-5 with people a-e.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 0 A film star | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a paints pictures. |
| 1 A singer | <input type="checkbox"/> | b works for a newspaper or television. |
| 2 A musician | <input type="checkbox"/> | c takes pictures. |
| 3 A journalist | <input type="checkbox"/> | d plays an instrument. |
| 4 An artist | <input type="checkbox"/> | e has a fantastic voice. |
| 5 A photographer | <input type="checkbox"/> | f is a famous actor or actress. |

3 For every noun choose two verbs from the box.

- [draw paint play practise read write]
- read vampire stories
- the violin
- a picture



VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

SPORT

- 1 Match sports equipment b-d to the appropriate group. Then write the correct names of sports in each group. First letters are given.



0 baseball

- Babe Ruth
- Hank Aaron
- Satchel Page

1 h

- Wayne Gretzky
- Sergei Fedorov
- Sidney Crosby

2 f

- Lionel Messi
- Pele
- Zinedine Zidane

3 t

- Boris Becker
- Pete Sampras
- Andy Murray

- 2 Match words 1-5 with a-e.

0 ride

1 coach

2 take part

3 score

4 get

5 play

a a goal

b for a team

c fit

d a football team

e in competitions

f a bike

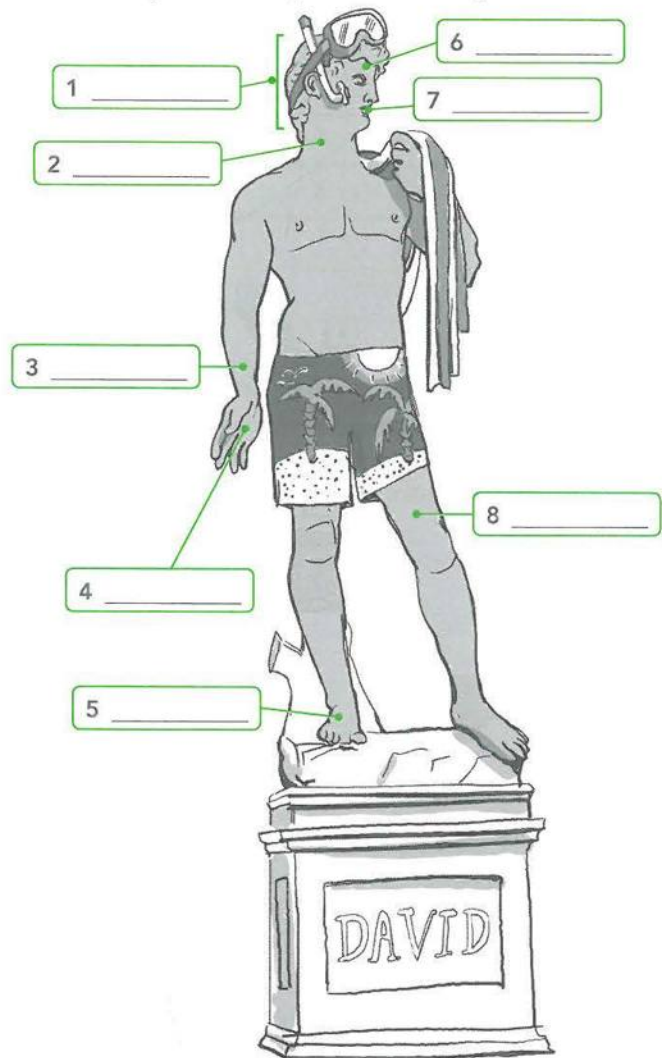
- 3 Use the words from the box to complete the diagram.

a bronze medal a gym a prize
a sports centre a stadium badminton
gold golf jogging karate martial arts
skiing swimming volleyball yoga



HEALTH

- 1 Label the picture with parts of the body.



- 2 Complete the text with missing words. First letters are given.

How to have a healthy lifestyle

- Do some ⁰exercise after you get up in the morning.
- Have a ¹h breakfast before you go to school or work.
- Take regular ²b at work.
- Spend a lot of time ³o even when it's cold.
- Try to ⁴k f and go to the ⁵g twice a week.
- Don't ⁶s u late.
- Get ⁷e sleep.

I hope you'll ⁸f good!

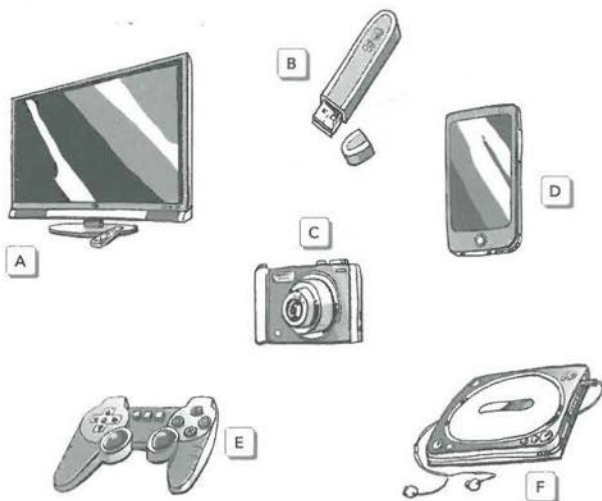
VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

1 Match words 1–5 to a–e to form names of electronic equipment. Then match them to the pictures (B–F).

- 0 plasma
- 1 computer
- 2 CD
- 3 digital
- 4 memory
- 5 mobile

- a player
- b stick
- c camera
- d phone
- e game
- f TV

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☒


2 Choose the correct answers.

- 0 You use a digital camera
 - ☒ A to take photos.
 - ☐ B to do photos.
 - ☐ C to make photos.
- 1 When you download something to your computer, you
 - ☐ A move it from your PC to a computer network.
 - ☐ B print it out.
 - ☐ C move it from a network to your PC.
- 2 Marie Skłodowska-Curie was a famous
 - ☐ A writer.
 - ☐ B scientist.
 - ☐ C artist.
- 3 Which of these can't a smartphone do?
 - ☐ A Download information
 - ☐ B Make a film
 - ☐ C Cook dinner
- 4 Which of these isn't a person?
 - ☐ A A scientist
 - ☐ B A robot
 - ☐ C An inventor
- 5 Which of these doesn't play music?
 - ☐ A A memory stick
 - ☐ B A tablet
 - ☐ C A CD player
- 6 Which of these isn't given as a present?
 - ☐ A A computer game
 - ☐ B A tablet
 - ☐ C A website

THE NATURAL WORLD

1 Complete the text with the expressions from the box.

cut down trees plant new trees
~~is in danger~~ pollute the environment
 recycle rubbish save animals



ECO-FRIENDS

The earth ⁰ is in danger!

We must do something!

Big factories ¹ _____!

If we don't do something, the air will be so dirty that we will not be able to breathe!

People ² _____ in the rainforests!

If we don't stop them, we will live in a world without animals and plants.

Our organisation helps to ³ _____, such as tigers and whales.

We ⁴ _____ and produce new materials such as paper and glass.

We also ⁵ _____ so that we can save the forests.

Be eco-friendly!

Join us!

The world depends on your decision!

2 Match words 1–10 to a–j to form words and phrases to do with nature and the environment.

0 sort

1 nuclear

2 tropical

3 coral

4 national

5 environmentally

6 nature

7 global

8 weather

9 public

10 power

☒
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

a park

b station

c reserve

d energy

e reef

f rainforest

g transport

h friendly

i warming

j forecast

k rubbish

VOCABULARY BANK EXERCISES

STATE AND SOCIETY

1 Match words 1-5 to a-e to make compounds.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| 0 Peace | <input type="text" value="f"/> | a programme |
| 1 promote | <input type="text"/> | b organisation |
| 2 government | <input type="text"/> | c countries |
| 3 voluntary | <input type="text"/> | d peace |
| 4 non-profit | <input type="text"/> | e work |
| 5 poor | <input type="text"/> | f Corps |

2 Complete the text with phrases from Exercise 1.

American Peace Corps

President John F. Kennedy started the ⁰Peace Corps in 1961. His idea was to ¹_____ and friendship between the USA and ²_____ around the world. The Peace Corps is a ³_____. It means Americans go to Africa or Asia for two years and do some ⁴_____. They are not paid but many of them say that taking part in this ⁵_____ was the best experience in their lives.

3 Complete the sentences. First letters are given.

- Governments should support **a**griculture. There are too many hungry people in the world.
- You can't **v**_____ in an election if you are under 18.
- UNICEF is a **c**_____ which protects children's rights worldwide.
- Thousands of volunteers **r**_____ money for RSPCA.
- I want to move to the country and **g**_____ my own vegetables.
- E**_____ is very important so we need good schools.

4 Read the information and do the crossword. What's the hidden word?



- The capital of Scotland
- The capital of Wales
- The official language in Australia
- The capital of Northern Ireland
- One of the four parts of the United Kingdom
- The capital of Ireland
- The capital of the United Kingdom



SELF-CHECKS ANSWER KEY

Unit 1

Exercise 1

1 f 2 d 3 b 4 h 5 a

Exercise 2

1 On 2 at 3 on 4 in 5 at

Exercise 3

1 get 2 look 3 take 4 come 5 have

Exercise 4

1 We are always tired at the end of the school day. 2 My brother doesn't like reading books. He prefers comics. 3 Mike never has lunch at school. 4 Erin doesn't watch television. 5 What kind of music do you listen to when you relax?

Exercise 5

1 What sports does your best friend play? 2 What is your cousin's favourite film? 3 What does your father eat for breakfast? 4 What time do your sisters get up on Saturdays? 5 How often do you go to discos?

Exercise 6

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 C

Unit 2

Exercise 1

1 can 2 packet 3 mushrooms
4 cheese 5 bar

Exercise 2

1 shelves 2 trolley 3 checkout
4 snack 5 takeaway

Exercise 3

1 spicy 2 fry 3 local 4 slice
5 delicious

Exercise 4

Conversation 1: a a lot
Conversation 2: a there any
b is some
Conversation 3: a Is there any
b much

Exercise 5

1 An 2 the 3 a 4 - 5 the

Exercise 6

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C 5 A

Unit 3

Exercise 1

1 architect 2 journalist 3 mechanic
4 soldier 5 waitress

Exercise 2

1 lawyer 2 receptionist 3 assistant
4 accountant 5 instructor

Exercise 3

1 badly-paid 2 part-time 3 in
4 with 5 long

Exercise 4

Conversation 1: Are you making
Conversation 2: a I'm not working
b is getting Conversation 3: a is Seth
sitting b 's having

Exercise 5

1 's working 2 loves
3 doesn't want 4 writes
5 'm dreaming

Exercise 6

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 A

Unit 4

Exercise 1

1 middle-aged 2 tall 3 quite 4 slim
5 dark

Exercise 2

1 tolerant 2 suit 3 naive 4 scarf
5 socks

Exercise 3

1 more interesting 2 less funny
3 more famous 4 more stupid 5 best

Exercise 4

1 cleverest 2 worse 3 fitter
4 less positive 5 laziest

Exercise 5

1 I have to get up 2 my sister has to
catch 3 I have to drive 4 You don't
have to take 5 does she have to leave

Exercise 6

1 C 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 A

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1 proud 2 university 3 stays 4 pass
5 state

Exercise 2

1 late 2 classes 3 single-sex
4 Mixed 5 education

Exercise 3

1a on 1b time 2a do 2b homework
3a miss 3b lesson 4a do 4b badly
5a fail 5b exams

Exercise 4

1 should 2 couldn't 3 don't have to
4 shouldn't 5 have to

Exercise 5

1 were 2 weren't 3 could 4 couldn't
5 wasn't

Exercise 6

1 C 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 A

Unit 6

Exercise 1

1 do 2 go 3 take 4 play
5 keep (stay / be)

Exercise 2

1 cycling 2 skiers 3 joggers 4 sailor
5 swam

Exercise 3

1 ran 2 played 3 had 4 went 5 ate

Exercise 4

1 I met my friends, saw a film, ate a
burger and had a good time. 2a Did
you play any sports at school last
week? 2b No, I we didn't. We had
exams all week. 3a Did Simon win his
race? 3b Yes, he did. He came first by
5.2 seconds.

Exercise 5

1 enjoy 2 stand 3 into 4 really
5 care

Exercise 6

1 A 2 B 3 C 4 B 5 C

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 rise raise 2 signs sights
3 arrangements excursions
4 southernfar southernmost
5 best better

Exercise 2

1 flight 2 guesthouse 3 ferry
4 youth hostel 5 backpacking

Exercise 3

1 platform 2 passengers 3 campsite
4 underground 5 luggage

Exercise 4

1 Have you looked at the departures
board yet 2 hasn't left Spain yet
3 She's just given 4 I haven't had
breakfast yet 5 We've already booked

Exercise 5

1 I have 2 did you go 3 We went
4 Did you enjoy 4 We slept

Exercise 6

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 A

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1 We saw a family of gorillas in the
rainforest. 2 We went kayaking along
a dangerous river. 3 There was a boat
trip to a coral reef. 4 The town was in
a green valley. 5 Snow leopards are
difficult to see in the snow.

Exercise 2

1 cloud 2 butterflies 3 whales
4 foggy 5 dangerous

Exercise 3

1 G 2 A 3 E 4 F 5 C

Exercise 4

1 I'm not going to travel by plane this
summer. 2 Is Miranda going to get a
job next year? 3 Will it be sunny this
weekend? 4 We're going to finish our
project tonight. 5 There won't be any
cars in 2049.

Exercise 5

1 will they live 2 m going to join
3 aren't going to join 4 isn't going to
drive 5 are you going to do

Exercise 6

1 illegal 2 characteristic 3 won't
4 picturesque 5 going

FOCUS ONE

Focus is a rich, varied, carefully levelled course for upper secondary students. Specially designed to motivate older teens, it helps them to track their level and achieve the exam results they need. With its unique blended learning package, Focus is the flexible course that gets results.

MOTIVATION

- Language is brought to life through grammar animations, interactive videos and culturally relevant clips
- Learning is tracked via personalised reporting in the online Gradebook
- Development of language and exam strategies are carefully levelled to the GSE

MEMORY

- The unique approach to vocabulary acquisition via the Word Store helps new words stick in students' memories
- Language acquisition is driven by careful recycling of vocabulary and grammar
- Exam skills are reinforced by Cambridge and PTE General practice booklets

MEANING

- English is made relevant to students' own lives by frequent personalisation
- Meaningful practice is provided by the extensive selection of editable worksheets, assessment programme and tests

FOR STUDENTS



Students' Book



Workbook



MyEnglishLab

FOR TEACHERS



Teacher's Book



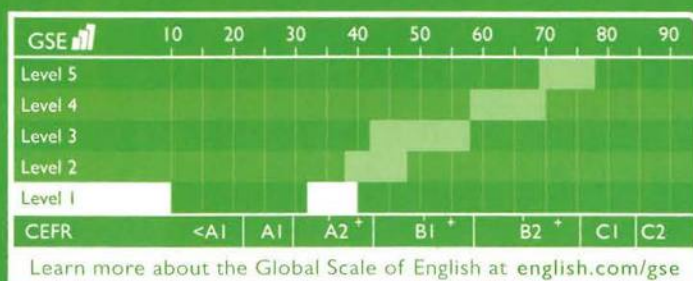
MultiROM



Class CDs



ActiveTeach



www.english.com/focus



Progress accurately measures student progress in English, highlighting strengths and weaknesses to inform teaching.

ISBN 978-1-4479-9775-7

